

# Service Manual

## **Inverter Pair** Wall Mounted Type E-Series





[Applied Models] •Inverter Pair : Heat Pump

# Inverter Pair E-Series

•Heat Pump

**Indoor Units** 

FTXR28EV1B FTXR42EV1B FTXR50EV1B

**Outdoor Units** 

RXR28EV1B RXR42EV1B RXR50EV1B

|        | 1.      | . Introduction<br>1.1 Safety Cautions   |                |
|--------|---------|---|----------------|
| Part 1 | List of | Functions   | 1              |
|        | 1.      | . Functions   | 2              |
| Part 2 | Specifi | ications  | 3              |
|        | 1.      | Specifications  | 4              |
| Part 3 | Printed | l Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram  | ·7             |
|        | 1.      | <ul> <li>Printed Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram</li> <li>1.1 Indoor Unit</li> <li>1.2 Outdoor Unit</li> </ul>   | 8              |
| Part 4 | Functio | on and Control  | 13             |
|        |         | Description of Operation<br>1.1 Indoor Unit<br>1.2 Outdoor Unit   | 15<br>16       |
|        | 2.      | <ul> <li>Main Functions</li></ul>   | 17<br>26<br>28 |
|        |         | <ul> <li>2.4 MOISTURIZING Operation</li> <li>2.5 Automatic Operation</li> <li>2.6 Comfort Airflow Mode</li> <li>2.7 Cooling Breeze Operation</li> </ul>                             | 31<br>32       |
|        |         | <ul> <li>2.8 Power-airflow Dual Flaps</li> <li>2.9 Wide-angle Louvers</li> <li>2.10 3-D Airflow</li> <li>2.11 POWERFUL Operation</li> </ul>   | 36<br>37       |
|        |         | <ul><li>2.12 Indoor Unit Quiet Operation</li><li>2.13 Multi-colored Indicator Lamp</li><li>2.14 Monitor Brightness Setting</li></ul>  | 39<br>39<br>40 |
|        |         | <ul> <li>2.15 Information Display</li> <li>2.16 MOLD PROOF Operation</li> <li>2.17 Mold Proof Stick</li> <li>2.18 MOLD SHOCK Operation</li> </ul>                                   | 41<br>43<br>44 |
|        |         | <ul> <li>2.19 HOME LEAVE Ventilation</li> <li>2.20 FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING Operation</li> <li>2.21 Fresh Air Supply Ventilation</li> <li>2.22 Wipe-clean Flat Panel</li> </ul> | 48<br>51       |
|        |         | <ul><li>2.23 Filter Cleaning Indicator (Remote Controller)</li><li>2.24 TIMER Operation</li><li>2.25 Night Set Mode</li></ul>   | 53<br>54<br>55 |
|        |         | <ul><li>2.26 Table for Special Modes</li><li>2.27 Thermostat Control</li><li>2.28 Fan Speed Control for Indoor Units</li><li>2.29 Draft Prevention (HOT Start)</li></ul>            | 58<br>59       |

|        | 3.      | Control Specification  | 62  |
|--------|---------|--|-----|
|        |         | 3.1 Frequency Control  |     |
|        |         | 3.2 Preheating Operation (Quick Warming Function)                                    |     |
|        |         | 3.3 Four-way Valve Operation   |     |
|        |         | 3.4 Compressor Start up Protection   |     |
|        |         | 3.5 Fan Speed Control for Outdoor Unit   |     |
|        |         | 3.6 Fin Thermistor Control   |     |
|        |         | 3.7 Input Current Control  | 67  |
|        |         | 3.8 Peak-cut Control   | 68  |
|        |         | 3.9 Indoor Coil Freeze-up Protection   | 69  |
|        |         | 3.10 Dew Prevention  |     |
|        |         | 3.11 Liquid Compression Protection 2   | 71  |
|        |         | 3.12 Discharge Pipe Temperature Control  |     |
|        |         | 3.13 Automatic Defrosting  |     |
|        |         | 3.14 Electronic Expansion Valve Control  | 75  |
| Part 5 | System  | Configuration  | 81  |
|        | 1.      | Installation Manual  | 82  |
|        |         | 1.1 Indoor Units   | 82  |
|        |         | 1.2 Outdoor Units  | 96  |
|        | 2.      | System Configuration   |     |
|        | 3.      |  |     |
|        |         | 3.1 Safety Precautions   |     |
|        |         | 3.2 Names and Functions of Parts   |     |
|        |         | 3.3 Preparation before Operation   | 110 |
|        |         | 3.4 Cooling "SARARA" DRYING Operation  | 112 |
|        |         | 3.5 Heating . "URURU" HUMIDIFYING Operation  | 113 |
|        |         | 3.6 AUTO / MOISTURIZING Operation  | 114 |
|        |         | 3.7 Adjusting Airflow Direction · Comfort Airflow Mode · Cooling Bre<br>Airflow Rate |     |
|        |         | 3.8 FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING · FRESH AIR SUPPLY                                  |     |
|        |         | VENTILATION Operation / HOME LEAVE VENTILATION                                       |     |
|        |         | 3.9 TIMER Operation  |     |
|        |         | 3.10 COMFORT SLEEP / POWERFUL Operation  |     |
|        |         | 3.11 SET UP  |     |
|        |         | 3.12 MOLD PROOF Operation  | 120 |
|        |         | 3.13 MOLD SHOCK Operation / INFORMATION DISPLAY                                      | 121 |
|        |         | 3.14 Care and Cleaning   | 122 |
|        |         | 3.15 Troubleshooting   | 130 |
| Part 6 | Service | Diagnosis  | 135 |
|        | 1.      | Convenient Service Check Function  | 137 |
|        | 2.      | Troubleshooting  |     |
|        |         | 2.1 Error Code Indication by Remote Controller                                       |     |
|        |         | 2.2 Air conditioner does not run.  |     |
|        |         | 2.3 Air conditioner runs but does not get cooling (heating)                          | 143 |
|        |         | 2.4 When operation starts, safety breaker works.                                     |     |
|        |         | 2.5 Air conditioner makes big noise and vibration                                    |     |
|        |         | 2.6 Air does not humidified enough   | 148 |
|        |         | 2.7 Indoor Unit PCB Fault  | 150 |
|        |         | 2.8 Peak-cut Control or Freeze-up Protection   | 151 |

Table of Contents

|    | 2.9  | Fan Motor System (DC Motor) Fault                              | 153      |
|----|------|--|----------|
|    | 2.10 | Streamer Unit Fault  | 155      |
|    | 2.11 | Thermistor System Fault  | 157      |
|    | 2.12 | Front Panel Open / Close Fault                                 | 158      |
|    |      | Humidity Sensor Fault  |          |
|    |      | Signal Transmission Error (Indoor Unit - Outdoor Unit)         |          |
|    |      | Incompatible Power Supply between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit |          |
|    |      | Incomplete Setting for Hose Length                             |          |
|    |      | Outdoor Unit PCB Fault   |          |
|    |      | OL Activation (Compressor Overload)                            |          |
|    |      | Compressor Lock  |          |
|    |      | DC Fan Lock  |          |
|    |      | Input Over Current Detection                                   |          |
|    |      | Four Way Valve Fault   |          |
|    |      | Discharge Pipe Temperature Control                             |          |
|    |      | High Pressure Control in Cooling                               |          |
|    |      | Compressor Sensor System Fault                                 |          |
|    |      | Damper Fault   |          |
|    |      | Position Sensor Fault  |          |
|    |      | DC Voltage / DC Current Sensor Fault                           |          |
|    |      | Thermistor System Fault  |          |
|    |      | Abnormal Temperature in Electrical Box                         |          |
|    |      | Temperature Rise in Radiation Fin                              |          |
|    |      | Output Overcurrent   |          |
|    |      | Insufficient Gas   |          |
|    |      | Over Voltage Protection / Low Voltage Protection               |          |
|    |      | Outdoor Unit PCB Fault or Communication Circuit Fault          |          |
|    |      | Signal Transmission Error on Outdoor Unit PCB                  |          |
|    |      | Fan Motor System Fault / Fan Lock                              |          |
|    |      | Heater Wire Fault  |          |
|    |      | Humidification Fan Outlet Thermistor Fault /                   |          |
|    | 2.00 | Abnormal Heater Temperature                                    | 199      |
|    | 2 40 | Lights-out of Microcomputer Status Lamp                        |          |
| 3. |      | k  |          |
| 5. | 3.1  | Thermistor Resistance Check                                    |          |
|    | 3.2  | Installation Condition Check                                   |          |
|    | 3.3  | Outdoor Fan System Check (DC Motor)                            |          |
|    | 3.4  | Power Supply Waveform Check                                    |          |
|    | 3.5  | Capacitor Voltage Check  |          |
|    | 3.6  | Main Circuit Electrolytic Capacitor Check                      |          |
|    | 3.7  | Refrigerant System Check                                       |          |
|    | 3.8  | "Inverter Checker" Check                                       |          |
|    | 3.9  | Power Transistor Check   |          |
|    |      | Discharge Pressure Check                                       |          |
|    |      | Electronic Expansion Valve Check                               |          |
|    |      | Indoor Unit PCB Output Check                                   |          |
|    |      | Rotating Pulse Input on Outdoor Unit PCB Check                 |          |
|    |      | Humidity Sensor Check  |          |
|    |      | Main Circuit Short Check                                       |          |
|    |      | Four-way Valve Performance Check                               |          |
|    |      | Solenoid Valve for Dehumidification Check                      |          |
|    | 5.17 |  | <u> </u> |

| Part 7 | Removal Procedure   | 215 |
|--------|---|-----|
|        | 1. Indoor Unit  | 216 |
|        | 1.1 Removal of the Air Filters / Front panel  |     |
|        | 1.2 Removal of the Upper Panel  |     |
|        | 1.3 Removal of the Front Grille   | 225 |
|        | 1.4 Removal of the Assembly of the Open/Close Mechanism   | 228 |
|        | 1.5 Removal of the Assembly of the Reduction Motor  | 230 |
|        | 1.6 Removal of the Electrical Box   |     |
|        | 1.7 Removal of the PCB  |     |
|        | 1.8 Removal of the Dehumidifying Solenoid Valve Coil  |     |
|        | 1.9 Removal of the Connecting Duct  |     |
|        | 1.10 Removal of the Drain Hose  |     |
|        | 1.11 Removal of the Swing Motor   |     |
|        | 1.12 Removal of the Heat Exchanger  |     |
|        | 1.13 Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor   |     |
|        | 1.14 Removal of Horizontal Blades / Vertical Blades<br>1.15 Removal of the Streamer Unit                          |     |
|        |   |     |
|        | 2. Outdoor Unit   |     |
|        | 2.1 Removal of the Humidify Unit  |     |
|        | 2.2 Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor | 266 |
|        | 2.3 Removal of the Humidifying Assembly   |     |
|        | 2.3 Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor  |     |
|        | 2.5 Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor  |     |
|        | 2.6 Removal of the Duct in Humidifier   |     |
|        | 2.7 Removal of the Electrical Box   |     |
|        | 2.8 Removal of the PCB  |     |
|        | 2.9 Removal of the Sound Blanket  |     |
|        | 2.10 Remove the Thermistor Assembly   |     |
|        | 2.11 Removal of the Reactor / Partition Plate   |     |
|        | 2.12 Removal of the Four Way Valve  |     |
|        | 2.13 Removal of the Expansion Valve   |     |
|        | 2.14 Removal of the Compressor  |     |
| Part 8 | Others  | 297 |
|        | 1. Others   | 000 |
|        | <ol> <li>Others</li> <li>1.1 Test Run from the Remote Controller</li> </ol>                                       |     |
|        | 1.2 Field Setting   |     |
|        |   | 299 |
| Part 9 | Appendix  | 301 |
|        | 1. Piping Diagrams  |     |
|        | 1.1 Indoor Units  |     |
|        | 1.2 Outdoor Units   |     |
|        | 2. Wiring Diagrams  |     |
|        | 2.1 Indoor Units  |     |
|        | 2.2 Outdoor Units   |     |
|        |   |     |

| Index  |                  | <br> | i   |
|--------|------------------|------|-----|
| Drawin | gs & Flow Charts | <br> | iii |

# Introduction Safety Cautions

## Cautions and Warnings

- Be sure to read the following safety cautions before conducting repair work.
- The caution items are classified into " A Warning" and " Caution". The " Warning" items are especially important since they can lead to death or serious injury if they are not followed closely. The " Caution" items can also lead to serious accidents under some conditions if they are not followed. Therefore, be sure to observe all the safety caution items described below.
- About the pictograms
  - $\triangle$  This symbol indicates an item for which caution must be exercised.
  - The pictogram shows the item to which attention must be paid.
  - This symbol indicates a prohibited action.
    - The prohibited item or action is shown inside or near the symbol.
    - This symbol indicates an action that must be taken, or an instruction.
  - The instruction is shown inside or near the symbol.
- After the repair work is complete, be sure to conduct a test operation to ensure that the equipment operates normally, and explain the cautions for operating the product to the customer.

#### 1.1.1 Caution in Repair

| Warning   |            |
|---|------------|
| Be sure to disconnect the power cable plug from the plug socket before<br>disassembling the equipment for a repair.<br>Working on the equipment that is connected to a power supply can cause an<br>electrical shook.<br>If it is necessary to supply power to the equipment to conduct the repair or<br>inspecting the circuits, do not touch any electrically charged sections of the<br>equipment. |            |
| If the refrigerant gas discharges during the repair work, do not touch the discharging refrigerant gas.<br>The refrigerant gas can cause frostbite.   | $\bigcirc$ |
| When disconnecting the suction or discharge pipe of the compressor at the welded section, release the refrigerant gas completely at a well-ventilated place first.<br>If there is a gas remaining inside the compressor, the refrigerant gas or refrigerating machine oil discharges when the pipe is disconnected, and it can cause injury.  |            |
| If the refrigerant gas leaks during the repair work, ventilate the area. The refrigerant gas can generate toxic gases when it contacts flames.  | 0          |
| The step-up capacitor supplies high-voltage electricity to the electrical components of the outdoor unit.<br>Be sure to discharge the capacitor completely before conducting repair work.<br>A charged capacitor can cause an electrical shock.   | A          |
| Do not start or stop the air conditioner operation by plugging or unplugging the<br>power cable plug.<br>Plugging or unplugging the power cable plug to operate the equipment can<br>cause an electrical shock or fire.   | $\bigcirc$ |

| Do not repair the electrical components with wet hands.<br>Working on the equipment with wet hands can cause an electrical shock.  | $\mathbf{}$ |
|--|-------------|
|  | $\bigcirc$  |
| Do not clean the air conditioner by splashing water.<br>Washing the unit with water can cause an electrical shock.   | $\bigcirc$  |
| Be sure to provide the grounding when repairing the equipment in a humid or wet place, to avoid electrical shocks.   | Ð           |
| Be sure to turn off the power switch and unplug the power cable when cleaning<br>the equipment.<br>The internal fan rotates at a high speed, and cause injury.   |             |
| Do not tilt the unit when removing it.<br>The water inside the unit can spill and wet the furniture and floor.   | $\bigcirc$  |
| Be sure to check that the refrigerating cycle section has cooled down<br>sufficiently before conducting repair work.<br>Working on the unit when the refrigerating cycle section is hot can cause burns. |             |
| Use the welder in a well-ventilated place.<br>Using the welder in an enclosed room can cause oxygen deficiency.  | 0           |

### 1.1.2 Cautions Regarding Products after Repair

| <b>Warning</b>   |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| Be sure to use parts listed in the service parts list of the applicable model and<br>appropriate tools to conduct repair work. Never attempt to modify the<br>equipment.<br>The use of inappropriate parts or tools can cause an electrical shock,<br>excessive heat generation or fire.                 |                         |
| When relocating the equipment, make sure that the new installation site has sufficient strength to withstand the weight of the equipment.<br>If the installation site does not have sufficient strength and if the installation work is not conducted securely, the equipment can fall and cause injury. |                         |
| Be sure to install the product correctly by using the provided standard installation frame.<br>Incorrect use of the installation frame and improper installation can cause the equipment to fall, resulting in injury.   | For integral units only |
| Be sure to install the product securely in the installation frame mounted on a window frame.<br>If the unit is not securely mounted, it can fall and cause injury.   | For integral units only |

| Warning  |            |
|--|------------|
| Be sure to use an exclusive power circuit for the equipment, and follow the technical standards related to the electrical equipment, the internal wiring regulations and the instruction manual for installation when conducting electrical work.<br>Insufficient power circuit capacity and improper electrical work can cause an electrical shock or fire.   |            |
| Be sure to use the specified cable to connect between the indoor and outdoor<br>units. Make the connections securely and route the cable properly so that there<br>is no force pulling the cable at the connection terminals.<br>Improper connections can cause excessive heat generation or fire.   |            |
| When connecting the cable between the indoor and outdoor units, make sure<br>that the terminal cover does not lift off or dismount because of the cable.<br>If the cover is not mounted properly, the terminal connection section can cause<br>an electrical shock, excessive heat generation or fire.   |            |
| Do not damage or modify the power cable.<br>Damaged or modified power cable can cause an electrical shock or fire.<br>Placing heavy items on the power cable, and heating or pulling the power cable<br>can damage the cable.  | $\bigcirc$ |
| Do not mix air or gas other than the specified refrigerant (R-410A / R22) in the refrigerant system.<br>If air enters the refrigerating system, an excessively high pressure results, causing equipment damage and injury.   |            |
| If the refrigerant gas leaks, be sure to locate the leak and repair it before<br>charging the refrigerant. After charging refrigerant, make sure that there is no<br>refrigerant leak.<br>If the leak cannot be located and the repair work must be stopped, be sure to<br>perform pump-down and close the service valve, to prevent the refrigerant gas<br>from leaking into the room. The refrigerant gas itself is harmless, but it can<br>generate toxic gases when it contacts flames, such as fan and other heaters,<br>stoves and ranges. | 0          |
| When replacing the coin battery in the remote controller, be sure to disposed of the old battery to prevent children from swallowing it. If a child swallows the coin battery, see a doctor immediately.   |            |

| Caution   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| Installation of a leakage breaker is necessary in some cases depending on the conditions of the installation site, to prevent electrical shocks.  |                         |
| Do not install the equipment in a place where there is a possibility of combustible gas leaks.<br>If a combustible gas leaks and remains around the unit, it can cause a fire.                  | $\bigcirc$              |
| Be sure to install the packing and seal on the installation frame properly.<br>If the packing and seal are not installed properly, water can enter the room and<br>wet the furniture and floor. | For integral units only |

### 1.1.3 Inspection after Repair

| <b>Warning</b>  |   |
|---|---|
| Check to make sure that the power cable plug is not dirty or loose, then insert<br>the plug into a power outlet all the way.<br>If the plug has dust or loose connection, it can cause an electrical shock or fire. | 0 |
| If the power cable and lead wires have scratches or deteriorated, be sure to<br>replace them.<br>Damaged cable and wires can cause an electrical shock, excessive heat<br>generation or fire.                       | 0 |

| 🔶 Warning  |            |
|--|------------|
| Do not use a joined power cable or extension cable, or share the same power<br>outlet with other electrical appliances, since it can cause an electrical shock,<br>excessive heat generation or fire.  | $\bigcirc$ |
| Caution  |            |
| Check to see if the parts and wires are mounted and connected properly, and if the connections at the soldered or crimped terminals are secure.<br>Improper installation and connections can cause excessive heat generation, fire or an electrical shock. |            |
| If the installation platform or frame has corroded, replace it.<br>Corroded installation platform or frame can cause the unit to fall, resulting in<br>injury.   |            |
| Check the grounding, and repair it if the equipment is not properly grounded.<br>Improper grounding can cause an electrical shock.   | ļ          |
| Be sure to measure the insulation resistance after the repair, and make sure that the resistance is 1 Mohm or higher.<br>Faulty insulation can cause an electrical shock.  |            |
| Be sure to check the drainage of the indoor unit after the repair.<br>Faulty drainage can cause the water to enter the room and wet the furniture<br>and floor.  |            |

#### 1.1.4 Using Icons

Icons are used to attract the attention of the reader to specific information. The meaning of each icon is described in the table below:

### 1.1.5 Using Icons List

| Icon    | Type of<br>Information | Description   |
|---------|------------------------|---|
| Note:   | Note                   | A "note" provides information that is not indispensable, but may<br>nevertheless be valuable to the reader, such as tips and tricks.  |
| Caution | Caution                | A "caution" is used when there is danger that the reader, through incorrect manipulation, may damage equipment, loose data, get an unexpected result or has to restart (part of) a procedure. |
| Warning | Warning                | A "warning" is used when there is danger of personal injury.  |
| Ľ       | Reference              | A "reference" guides the reader to other places in this binder or<br>in this manual, where he/she will find additional information on a<br>specific topic.                                    |

# Part 1 List of Functions

| 1. | Functions | 2 |
|----|-----------|---|
|----|-----------|---|

## 1. Functions

| Category    | Functions   | FTXR28/42/50EV1B<br>RXR28/42/50EV1B | Category                              | Functions  | FTXR28/42/50EV1B<br>RXR28/42/50EV1B |
|-------------|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
|             | Inverter (with Inverter Power Control)                                  | 0                                   |                                       | Air Purifying Filter with Bacteriostatic,                        |                                     |
| Basic       | Operation Limit for Cooling (°CDB)                                      | 21<br>~43                           |                                       | Virustatic Functions   | —                                   |
| Function    | Operation Limit for Heating (°CWB)                                      | -20<br>~24                          |                                       | Photocatalytic Deodorizing Filter                                | —                                   |
|             | PAM Control   | 0                                   |                                       | Air Purifying Filter with Photocatalytic<br>Deodorizing Function | —                                   |
|             | Oval Scroll Compressor  | —                                   |                                       | Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic                                  | 0                                   |
| Comprosoor  | Swing Compressor  | 0                                   |                                       | Air Purifying Filter   | 0                                   |
| Compressor  | Rotary Compressor   | —                                   |                                       | Air Intake Filter  | 0                                   |
|             | Reluctance DC Motor   | 0                                   |                                       | Flash Streamer Air Purifying                                     | 0                                   |
|             | Power-Airflow Flap  | -                                   | Health &                              | Mold Proof Air Filter  | 0                                   |
|             | Power-Airflow Dual Flaps  | 0                                   | Clean                                 | Wipe-clean Flat Panel  | 0                                   |
|             | Power-Airflow Diffuser  | —                                   | 1                                     | Washable Upper Grille  | 0                                   |
|             | Wide-Angle Louvers  | 0                                   |                                       | Filter Cleaning Indicator (Remote Controller)                    | 0                                   |
| Comfortable | Vertical Auto-Swing (Up and Down)                                       | 0                                   |                                       | Mold Proof Operation   | 0                                   |
| Airflow     | Horizontal Auto-Swing (Right and Left)                                  | 0                                   |                                       | Mold Shock Operation   | 0                                   |
|             | 3-D Airflow   | 0                                   |                                       | Mold Proof Stick   | 0                                   |
|             | Comfort Airflow Mode  | 0                                   |                                       | Comfort Sleep Operation  | 0                                   |
|             | Cooling Breeze Operation  | 0                                   | -                                     | Fresh Air Supply Ventilation                                     | 0                                   |
|             | 3-Step Airflow (H/P Only)   | _                                   |                                       | Home Leave Ventilation   | 0                                   |
|             | Auto Fan Speed  | 0                                   |                                       | Heating Dry Operation  | —                                   |
|             | Indoor Unit Quiet Operation   | 0                                   |                                       | Good-Sleep Cooling Operation                                     | _                                   |
|             | Night Quiet Mode (Automatic)  | _                                   |                                       | 24-Hour ON/OFF Timer   | 0                                   |
| Comfort     | Outdoor Unit Quiet Operation (Manual)                                   | _                                   | Timer                                 | Count Up-down ON/OFF Timer                                       | OFF<br>only                         |
| Control     | Intelligent Eye   | _                                   |                                       | Night Set Mode   | 0                                   |
|             | Quick Warming Function O  |                                     |                                       | Quiet Control  | 0                                   |
|             | Hot-Start Function  |                                     |                                       | Auto-Restart (after Power Failure)                               | 0                                   |
|             | Automatic Defrosting  | 0                                   | Worry Free                            | Self-Diagnosis (Remote Controller) Display                       | 0                                   |
|             | Automatic Operation   | 0                                   | "Reliability & Durability"            | Wiring Error Check   | _                                   |
|             | URURU Humidifying Operation   | 0                                   | Durability                            | Anticorrosion Treatment of Outdoor Heat                          | -                                   |
|             | Moisturizing Operation  | 0                                   |                                       | Exchanger  | 0                                   |
|             | SARARA Drying Operation   | 0                                   |                                       |  |                                     |
| Operation   | Dry Cooling Operation   | 0                                   | -                                     | Multi-Split / Split Compatible Indoor Unit                       | —                                   |
|             | Programme Dry Function  | _                                   | -                                     | Flexible Voltage Correspondence                                  | _                                   |
|             | Fan Only  | _                                   | Flexibility                           | High Ceiling Application   | _                                   |
|             | Air Purifying Operation   | 0                                   | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Chargeless   | 0                                   |
|             | New Powerful Operation (Non-Inverter)                                   | <u> </u>                            | 1                                     | Either Side Drain (Right or Left)                                | 0                                   |
|             | Inverter Powerful Operation   | 0                                   | 1                                     | Power Selection  |                                     |
|             | Dry Keep  | JP<br>set                           |                                       | 5-Rooms Centralized Controller (Option)                          | 0                                   |
|             | Priority-Room Setting   | 1 -                                 | 1                                     | Remote Control Adaptor   |                                     |
|             | Cooling / Heating Mode Lock   | <u> </u>                            | Remote                                | (Normal Open-Pulse Contact) (Option)                             | 0                                   |
|             | Home Leave Operation  | —                                   | Control                               | Remote Control Adaptor   | _                                   |
|             | ECONO Mode  | _                                   | 1                                     | (Normal Open Contact) (Option)                                   | 0                                   |
| Lifestyle   | Indoor Unit ON/OFF Switch   | 0                                   | 1                                     | DIII-NET Compatible (Adaptor) (Option)                           | 0                                   |
| Convenience | Multi-colored Indicator   | 0                                   | Remote                                | Wireless   | 0                                   |
|             | Monitor Brightness Setting  | 0                                   | Controller                            | Wired  | _                                   |
|             | Signal Reception Indicator  | 0                                   | 1                                     |  | 1                                   |
|             | Temperature & Humidity Level Information<br>Display (Remote Controller) | 0                                   |                                       |  |                                     |
|             | Childproof Lock   | 0                                   |                                       |  | 1                                   |
|             | Temperature Display   | —                                   |                                       | 1  |                                     |
| l           | Another Room Operation  | _                                   | 1                                     |  |                                     |
|             | O : Holding Functions   |                                     | I                                     | 1  | 1                                   |

Note: O : Holding Functions — : No Functions

# Part 2 Specifications

| 1. | Specifications | 4 |
|----|----------------|---|
|----|----------------|---|

#### 50Hz 220-230-240V

|  | Indoor Units   |  | FTXR2  | 8EV1B  | FTXR42   | 2EV1B   |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|
| Model  | Outdoor Units  |  | RXR28EV1B  |  | RXR42  | EV1B  |
|  |  |  | Cooling  | Heating  | Cooling  | Heating   |
| Conceitre  |  | kW   | 2.8 (1.55~3.60)  | 3.6 (1.30~5.00)  | 4.2 (1.55~4.60)  | 5.1 (1.30~5.60)   |
| Capacity<br>Rated (Min.~N  | (ax.)  | Btu/h  | 9,600 (5,300~12,300)   | 12,300 (4,400~16,400)  | 14,300 (5,300~15,700)  | 17,400 (4,400~19,100  |
|  |  | kcal/h   | 2,410 (1,330~3,100)  | 3,100 (1,120~4,130)  | 3,610 (1,330~3,960)  | 4,390 (1,120~4,820)   |
| Moisture Rem   | oval   | L/h  | 1.6  | —  | 2.3  | _   |
| Running Curre  | ent (Rated)  | A  | 3.2-3.1-3.0  | 3.9-3.8-3.7  | 5.3-5.2-5.1  | 5.9-5.8-5.7   |
| Power Consur   | nption   | W  | 560 (250~800)  | 700 (200~1,410)  | 1,050 (260~1,320)  | 1,180 (220~1,600)   |
| Rated (Min.~N  | láx.)  |  |  |  |  |   |
| Power Factor   |  | %  | 79.5-78.5-77.8   | 81.6-80.1-78.8   | 90.1-87.8-85.8   | 90.9-88.5-86.3  |
| COP  |  | W/W  | 5.00 (6.20~4.50)   | 5.14 (5.91~3.55)   | 4.00 (5.96~3.48)   | 4.32 (5.91~3.50)  |
| Rated (Min.~N  | , ,  | -  | <b>X</b>   | ( ,  | (  | . ,   |
| Piping   | Liquid   | mm   |  | 6.4  | φ 6.   |   |
| Connections  | Gas  | mm   |  | 9.5  | φ 9.   |   |
|  | Drain  | mm   |  | 8.0  | φ18<br>  |   |
| Heat Insulation  |  |  |  | nd Gas Pipes   | Both Liquid an   |   |
|  | Piping Length  | m  |  | 0  | 10   |   |
|  | Height Difference  | m  |  | 8  | 8  |   |
| Amount of Add  | ditional Charge  | g/m  | Char   | geless   | Charge   | eless   |
| of Refrigerant   |  | 9  |  |  | 9  |   |
| ndoor Unit   |  |  |  | 8EV1B  | FTXR42   |   |
| Front Panel Co   | olor   |  |  | nite   | Whi  |   |
|  |  | Н  | 11.1 (392)   | 12.4 (438)   | 12.4 (438)   | 12.9 (456)  |
| Air Flow Rate  | m³/min   | М  | 8.8 (311)  | 9.8 (346)  | 9.6 (339)  | 10.2 (360)  |
|  | (cfm)  | L  | 6.5 (230)  | 7.3 (258)  | 6.8 (240)  | 7.7 (272)   |
|  |  | SL   | 5.7 (201)  | 6.5 (230)  | 6.0 (212)  | 6.8 (240)   |
|  | Туре   |  | Cross Flow Fan   | (With Saw Edge)  | Cross Flow Fan (   | With Saw Edge)  |
| an   | Motor Output   | W  | 5  | 57   | 57   | 7   |
|  | Speed  | Steps  | 5 Steps. 0   | Quiet, Auto  | 5 Steps, Q   | uiet. Auto  |
| Air Direction C  |  |  |  | contal, Downward   | Right, Left, Horizo  | 1   |
| Air Filter   |  |  | 0, ,   | able / Mildew Proof  | Removable / Washa  | ,   |
| Running Curre  | ant (Rated)  | A  | 0.15-0.14-0.13   | 0.15-0.14-0.13   | 0.17-0.16-0.15   | 0.17-0.16-0.15  |
| 0  | nption (Rated)   | W  | 30-30-30   | 30-30-30   | 35-35-35   | 35-35-35  |
| Power Factor   | nption (Nated)   | %  | 90.9-93.2-96.2   | 90.9-93.2-96.2   | 93.6-95.1-97.2   | 93.6-95.1-97.2  |
| Femperature (  | Control  | 70   |  |  | 93.0-95.1-97.2<br>Microcompu   |   |
|  |  |  |  | uter Control   | •  |   |
| Dimensions (H  | /  | mm   |  | 90×209   | 305×89   |   |
| 0  | nensions (H×W×D)   | mm   |  | 56×378   | 280×950  |   |
| Neight   |  | kg   |  | 4  | 14   |   |
| Gross Weight   | 1  | kg   | 2  | 20   | 20   | )   |
| Operation<br>Sound   | H/M/L/SL   | dBA  | 39/33/26/23  | 41/35/28/25  | 42/35/27/24  | 42/36/29/26   |
| Sound Power  | Н  | dBA  |  | 57   | 58   | 58  |
|  | <u> n</u>  | UDA  | 55   | -  |  |   |
| Dutdoor Unit   |  |  |  | 8EV1B  | RXR42  |   |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |   |
| asing COIOF  | -  |  | lvory  |  | Ivory V  |   |
|  | Туре   |  | Hermetically Se  | aled Swing Type  | Hermetically Sea   | led Swing Type  |
|  | Model  |  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36  | led Swing Type<br>CXD   |
|  | Model<br>Motor Output  | W  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1, <sup>-</sup>   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100   | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>00  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model   | W  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1, '<br>FVC   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K   | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10<br>FVC5  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>00<br>50K   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge   | W  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4   | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0,4   | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>00<br>50K<br>4  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model  |  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K   | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10<br>FVC5  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>00<br>50K<br>4  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge  |  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4  | Ied Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model  | L  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41   | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>0A  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge  | L  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4  | Ied Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min  | L  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1<br>33.8<br>800   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>.4<br>31.4  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4<br>36.2  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>20<br>50K<br>4<br>00A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm   | L  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>550K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,11<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4<br>36.2<br>850   | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>500<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>ir Flow Rate<br>HH)   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output   | L<br>kg  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop   | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>550K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>peller   | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>500<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>tir Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output   | kg<br>W  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>50K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10<br>FVC2<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>1,2<br>36,2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>500<br>50K<br>4<br>00A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>0  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>dir Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur  | Model<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>ent (Rated)  | kg<br>W<br>A<br>W  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>seller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670  | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>1,2<br>36,2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5,13-5,04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015   | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>500<br>50K<br>4<br>00A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>0<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-1,145   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>dir Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur<br>Power Factor  | Model         Motor Output         Model         Charge         Model         Charge         m³/min         cfm         Type         Motor Output         mnt (Rated)         mption (Rated) | U L Kg V A A W V %   | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>veller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2                                | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>1,2<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4                             | led Swing Type           SCXD         00           50K         4           00A         4           31.9         760           eller         0           5.73-5.64-5.55         1,145-1,145-1,145           90.8-88.3-86.0         90.8-88.3-86.0  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur<br>Power Factor<br>Starting Currel   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m <sup>3</sup> /min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mot (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)   | L           kg           W           A           W           A           W           A           W           A | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3  | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>50K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9                           | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,10<br>FVC5<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>1,2<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5                      | led Swing Type           SCXD           00           50K           4           10A           4           31.9           760           eller           0           5.73-5.64-5.55           1,145-1,145-1,145           90.8-88.3-86.0           9 |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur<br>Power Consur<br>Starting Curren<br>Dimensions (H  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mot (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)<br>nt<br>taxWxD)                                       | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>1<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693x79                                    | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>veller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>95×285                | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,11<br>FVC2<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x793                 | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>20<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>)<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285   |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur<br>Ower Factor<br>Starting Curre<br>Dimensions (H<br>Packaged Dim  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m <sup>3</sup> /min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mot (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)   | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm<br>mm  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693×77<br>693×77<br>63493                      | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>100<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>95×285<br>35×410     | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,11<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>1.4<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x79<br>736x93  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>D0<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>0<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285<br>5x410  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Factor<br>Starting Curren<br>Starting Curren<br>Dimensions (H<br>Packaged Dim<br>Neight   | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mot (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)<br>nt<br>taxWxD)                                       | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm<br>mkg   | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693x77<br>736×9<br>4                           | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>50K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>55×285<br>35×410<br>18 | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x799<br>736x93<br>48  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285<br>5x410<br>3  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Dil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Cartes Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Consurt<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Consurt<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Consurt<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower Consur<br>Consurt<br>Dower Consur<br>Consurt<br>Dower Consur<br>Dower | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m <sup>3</sup> /min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mt (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)<br>mt<br>txWxD)<br>tensions (HxWxD)        | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm<br>kg<br>kg  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693×79<br>693×79<br>693×79<br>736×93<br>4<br>5 | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>95×285<br>35×410<br>8 | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,11<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x793<br>736x933<br>48 | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-1,145<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285<br>5x410<br>3   |
| Power Factor<br>Starting Curren<br>Dimensions (H<br>Packaged Dim<br>Weight<br>Gross Weight<br>Operation  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m³/min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mot (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)<br>nt<br>taxWxD)                                       | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm<br>mkg   | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693x77<br>736×9<br>4                           | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>50K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>55×285<br>35×410<br>18 | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,1(<br>FVC5<br>0,2<br>R-41<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x799<br>736x93<br>48  | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285<br>5x410<br>3  |
| Compressor<br>Refrigerant<br>Oil<br>Refrigerant<br>Air Flow Rate<br>(HH)<br>Fan<br>Running Curre<br>Power Consur<br>Power Consur<br>Power Consur<br>Power Factor<br>Starting Curre<br>Dimensions (H<br>Packaged Dim<br>Weight<br>Gross Weight  | Model<br>Motor Output<br>Model<br>Charge<br>Model<br>Charge<br>m <sup>3</sup> /min<br>cfm<br>Type<br>Motor Output<br>mt (Rated)<br>mption (Rated)<br>mt<br>txWxD)<br>tensions (HxWxD)        | L<br>kg<br>W<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>W<br>%<br>A<br>mm<br>kg<br>kg  | Hermetically Se<br>2YC3<br>1,<br>FVC<br>0<br>R-4<br>33.8<br>800<br>Prop<br>6<br>3.05-2.96-2.87<br>530-530-530<br>79.0-77.8-76.9<br>3<br>693×79<br>693×79<br>693×79<br>736×93<br>4<br>5 | aled Swing Type<br>6CXD<br>100<br>250K<br>.4<br>10A<br>.4<br>31.4<br>750<br>beller<br>50<br>3.75-3.66-3.57<br>670-670-670<br>81.2-79.6-78.2<br>.9<br>95×285<br>35×410<br>8 | Hermetically Sea<br>2YC36<br>1,11<br>FVC5<br>0.4<br>R-41<br>36.2<br>850<br>Prope<br>60<br>5.13-5.04-4.95<br>1,015-1,015-1,015<br>89.9-87.6-85.4<br>5.5<br>693x793<br>736x933<br>48 | led Swing Type<br>SCXD<br>200<br>50K<br>4<br>10A<br>4<br>31.9<br>760<br>eller<br>)<br>5.73-5.64-5.55<br>1,145-1,145-<br>90.8-88.3-86.0<br>9<br>5x285<br>5x410<br>3<br>5   |

Note: The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

| Cooling                            | Heating                                  | Piping Length |
|------------------------------------|--|---------------|
| ; 27°CDB/19°CWB<br>; 35°CDB/24°CWB | Indoor ; 20°CDB<br>Outdoor ; 7°CDB/6°CWB | 7.5m          |

| Conversion Formulae                               |
|---|
| kcal/h=kWx860<br>Btu/h=kWx3414<br>cfm=m³/minx35.3 |
|   |

#### 50Hz 220-230-240V

| Model         Control RRSSE/VIB         Heating           Capasity<br>(Mr. +Mix.)         MV         5.0 (155-5.50)         6.0 (130-6.70)           Model (Mr. +Mix.)         Inchin         4.300 (155-5.50)         5.0 (130-6.70)           Model (Mr. +Mix.)         Inchin         4.300 (130-67.300)         5.0 (110-6.70)           Model (Mr. +Mix.)         Inchin         4.300 (130-67.70)         17.47.37.2           Paser Constrption<br>(Mr. Max.)         W         1.460 (260-1.800)         1.510 (230-1.770)           Power Factr         %         0.2 28.40(3)         0.2 8.403-97.4           Power Factr         Bol Lipid and Can Power         0.410.4         0.410.4           Power Factr         Bol Lipid and Can Power         0.410.4         0.410.4           Power Factr         Bol Lipid and Can Power         0.410.4         0.410.4           Rest Factron Factro Factron Factron Factro Factron Factron Factron Fa   | Indoor Units     |                   |       | FTXR50EV1B        |                     |  |  |
|--|------------------|-------------------|-------|-------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| Looking         Cooking         Cooking         Health           Raider (Min-Mark)         Buch         177 (10) (535-76.800)         20.800 (4402.00)           Raider (Min-Mark)         Horalth         177 (10) (535-76.800)         20.800 (4402.00)           Rainer (Barnoal         Ho         172.75.72         7.47.70           Rainer (Barnoal         W         14.200 (12.33-47.300)         15.00 (23.4-7.37.2           Provider Conserption         W         14.00 (20.800.100)         1.550 (23.4-7.20)           Provider Conserption         W         14.00 (20.8-1.00)         3.97 (5.85-3.50)           Provider Conserption         S         22.483.480.9         3.97 (5.85-3.50)           Provider Conserption         Gaa         mm         0.5         3.97 (5.85-3.50)           Raide (Min-Mark)         WW         3.42 (5.86-3.06)         3.97 (5.85-3.50)         2.5           Raide Total Trans         mm         0.5         3.97 (5.85-3.50)         2.5         2.5           Raide Total Trans         mm         0.6         3.97 (5.85-3.50)         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5         2.5  | Model            | Outdoor Units     |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c } \mbox{Losses} & barbox{Losses} & bar$   |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Matan Beneral         Indah         4.00(11,50,4-7,50)         0,00(11,50,4-7,50)           Ruming Convertion         A         7.27,7.0         7.4-3,7.2           Ruming Convertion         A         7.27,7.0         7.4-3,7.2           Read (Mn-Akc)         W         1.40 (200-1.00)         1.510 (230-1.70)           Power Factor         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,80,0           Print Particip         mm         6.6,4         6.6,4           Correction         mm         9.10         10           Max Internal Print Length         m         10         10           Max Internal Print Length         m         13,2470         140,464)           Front Print Convert         White         73,258)         13,2533,1           Front Pro   | Conocity         |                   |       | · · · · · ·       | 6.0 (1.30~6.20)     |  |  |
| Matan Beneral         Indah         4.00(11,50,4-7,50)         0,00(11,50,4-7,50)           Ruming Convertion         A         7.27,7.0         7.4-3,7.2           Ruming Convertion         A         7.27,7.0         7.4-3,7.2           Read (Mn-Akc)         W         1.40 (200-1.00)         1.510 (230-1.70)           Power Factor         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,89,97.4           Correction         %         9.22,88,486,5         9.25,80,0           Print Particip         mm         6.6,4         6.6,4           Correction         mm         9.10         10           Max Internal Print Length         m         10         10           Max Internal Print Length         m         13,2470         140,464)           Front Print Convert         White         73,258)         13,2533,1           Front Pro   | Rated (Min.~N    | Max.)             |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Running Current (Hated)         A         T.27.1-7.0         T.47.3-T.2           Power Consumption         W         1,460 (260-1800)         1,510 (230-1770)           Power Facter         %         52.286.486.9         02.880.877.4           Read (Min -Max)         WW         3.42 (5.96-3.06)         3.97 (5.65-3.50)           Priori         Sate         mm         0.9.5           Concretche         Sate         mm         0.9.5           Dain         mm         0.9.5         0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.   |                  |                   |       | //                | 5,160 (1,120~5,330) |  |  |
| Power Construction         W         1,460 (280-1,800)         1,510 (230-1,770)           Power Flactor         %         92:249.466.9         92:249.466.9         92:249.466.9           Corp (Inc., Max.)         WW         3.42 (5.96-3.06)         3.87 (5.65-3.50)           Relat Guint-Max.)         WW         3.42 (5.96-3.06)         3.87 (5.65-3.50)           Connection         Construction         9.5         9.5           Data         mm         0.95         9.5           Max. Interurt Pring Length         m         10         10           Max. Interurt Pring Length         M         10.3 (260)         11.1 (322)           Marce Outr         W         7.2 (280)         8.3 (270)         7.3 (280)           Fan         Marce Outra         W         5.6 (230)         7.7 (280)         8.3 (270)           Fan         Marce Outra         W         6.6 (230)         7.7 (280)         8.3 (270)           Fan         Marce Outra         W         6.6 (230)         7.3 (   |                  |                   | -     | -                 | _                   |  |  |
| Reade (Min-Make,)         W         (, Mov, Count, Coun  |                  |                   | A     | 7.2-7.1-7.0       | 7.4-7.3-7.2         |  |  |
| Power Factor         %         12:2:49.466.9         92:8:49.967.4           COP<br>Rated (Mn-Max)         WW         3.42 (5:86-3:06)         3.37 (5:85-3:50)           Connoctions         Case         nm         0.6.4           Connoctions         Case         nm         0.9.5           Dain         nm         0.9.5         0.6.4           Max         Interum Play Longin         m         0.9.5           Max         Interum Play Longin         m         0.9.5           Max         Interum Play Longin         m         0.0           Max         Interum Play Longin         m         0.0           Max         Interum Play Longin         m         0.0           Max         Interum Play Longin         M         0.0.3 (36.0)         1.1.1 (32.2)           From Parel Color         M         10.3 (36.0)         1.1.1 (32.2)         1.3.2 (32.0)           From Parel Color         M         10.3 (36.0)         1.1.1 (32.2)         1.3.2 (32.0)           From Parel Color         M         10.3 (36.0)         1.1.1 (32.2)         1.3.2 (32.0)           From Parel Color         NS         5.5 (36.2 (30.0)         7.3 (25.0)         1.4.1.2 (3.2 (30.0)         1.4.1.2 (3.2 (3.0) <td< td=""><td>Power Consur</td><td>mption</td><td>W</td><td>1,460 (260~1,800)</td><td>1,510 (230~1,770)</td></td<>  | Power Consur     | mption            | W     | 1,460 (260~1,800) | 1,510 (230~1,770)   |  |  |
| $ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $  |                  | ,                 | %     | 92 2-89 4-86 9    | 92 8-89 9-87 4      |  |  |
| Raise (Mn - Musc.)         WW         3.42 (5 85-30)         3.97 (5 55-30)           Poing<br>Connotation<br>(Gis         Ingel (Connot (Con(   | COP              |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Pairs<br>Darie         Concention         Gas         mm         0.95           Max         Internet Party Langth         m         Bott Liquid and Gas Pipes           Max         Internet Party Langth         m         0           Max         Internet Party Langth         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (392)           Max         Internet Party Langth         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (392)           Fan         Max         6.5 (230)         7.3 (236)         6.3 (233)           Fan         Steps         Steps         Steps         0.20 (4.040)           Part Decidio Control         X         Steps         Steps         0.20 (4.040)           Remong Variet (Latter)         A         0.20 (19.0 18)         0.20 (19.0 18)         0.20 (19.0 18)           Power Factor         Kg         0.20 (19.0 18)         0.20 (19.0 18)         0.20 (19.0 1  | Rated (Min.~N    | Max.)             | VV/VV | 3.42 (5.96~3.06)  | 3.97 (5.65~3.50)    |  |  |
| Connection         Data         Initial         0 40.3           Main Instance         Main Instance         Both Lipid and Gas Papes         Both Lipid and Gas Papes           Main Instance         mm         Both Lipid and Gas Papes         Both Lipid and Gas Papes           Main Instance         mm         Both Lipid and Gas Papes         Both Lipid and Gas Papes           Main Instance         mm         Both Lipid and Gas Papes         Both Lipid and Gas Papes           Indoor Unit         Frank Papel         Chargeless         Frank Papel           Air Plaw Rate         m <sup>N</sup> min<br>(cfm)         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (362)           Fort Panel Color         With E         Frank Pape         Cross Flaw Flam (With Saw Edge)           Fort Panel Color         St.         65 (200)         7.3 (268)           Fort Panel Color         St.         65 (200)         7.3 (268)           Arr Direction Control         St.         65 (200)         7.3 (268)           Arr Direction Control         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         40.40-0           Power Eactor         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         40.40-0           Prower Factor         Start Base Color         80.91.5 42.6         10.91.6           Prower Factor         Start Base Color <td></td> <td></td> <td>mm</td> <td>φ<b>6</b>.</td> <td>4</td>  |                  |                   | mm    | φ <b>6</b> .      | 4                   |  |  |
| Drain         mm         offa0           Max. Interurt Piong Length Otherance m         n         10           Max. Interurt Piong Length Otherance m         n         10           Arrange Model Difference m         n         14.0 (494)           Arrange Model Difference m         N         14.0 (494)           Arrange Model Difference m         14.0 (494)         11.1 (192)           Arrange Model Difference m         N         0.3 (364)         11.1 (192)           Arrange Model Difference m         N         0.3 (364)         7.3 (258)           Arrange Model Difference m         N         0.3 (250)         7.3 (258)           Speed         Speed Scatter Model Difference Model Difference Difference Model Difference Dif   |                  | Gas               | mm    | φ9.               | 5                   |  |  |
| Max. Interunt Piping Length         m         10           Max. Interunt Piping Length         m         8           Anount of Additional Charge         g/m         Chargeless           Indoc Unit         FTXRSGEV18           Forth Panal Color         While           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>M</sup> min<br>(dm)         H         113.3 (470)         14.0 (494)           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>M</sup> min<br>(dm)         H         10.3 (384)         11.1 (382)           Forth Panal Color         While         5.1         6.5 (230)         6.3 (283)           Fina         Micro Cutput         W         5.5 (230)         6.3 (283)           Air Direction Control         While         5.1         6.5 (230)         7.3 (258)           Air Direction Control         W         6.7         5.7         5.8           Air Direction Control         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (H-WAD)         mm         0.30:6959.209         0.20-0.19-0.18           Packaged Dimensions (H-WAD)         mm         0.30:6959.209  | Connections      | Drain             | mm    | φ <b>1</b> 8.     | 0                   |  |  |
| Max. Interruit Heigh Difference         m         8           Arr prover of Addingstant         grim         Chargeless           Indoor Unit         FTRXDSRV18         FTRXDSRV18           Front Preal Color         White         FTRXDSRV18           Arr Flow Rate         M         11.0.3 (364)         11.1.1 (302)           Arr Flow Rate         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (302)           State         6.5 (230)         7.3 (258)         6.3 (233)           Fan         Motor Output         W         State         7.3 (258)           Speed         State         5 (Stage, Outet, Auto         7.3 (258)         6.3 (233)           Arr Direction Control         W         90.404.01         0.20-119-0.18         7.5 (State)  | Heat Insulation  | n                 |       | Both Liquid an    | d Gas Pipes         |  |  |
| Anount of Additional Charge<br>Refingerant<br>(and Refingerant)         g/m         Chargeless           Indoor Unit<br>Foront Panel Color         White         White           Air Flow Rate<br>(rdm)         mmin<br>(rdm)         H         13.3 (470)         14.0 (494)           Air Flow Rate<br>(rdm)         mmin<br>(rdm)         H         103.3 (847)         11.1 (352)           Fan         Micro Cutput         W         6.5 (230)         6.3 (293)           Fan         Type         Cross Flow Fan (With Saw Edge)         5           Fan         Type         Cross Flow Fan (With Saw Edge)         5           Air Filter         Robot Cutput         W         5         5           Rinning Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         M         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Timerators (HWAD)         mm         0.306/990.2009           Packaged Dimensions (HWAD)         mm         0.306/990.2009           Packaged Dimensions (HWAD)         Mg         14           Gross Weight         kg         0.0           Sound Power H         dBA         6  | Max. Interunit   | Piping Length     | m     | 10                |                     |  |  |
| of Refrigerant v g m g m g m g m g m g m g m g m g m g   | Max. Interunit   | Height Difference | m     | 8                 |                     |  |  |
| Or Respiration         P           From Panel Color         FIXESBEV1B           From Panel Color         White           From Panel Color         M           Air Flow Rate         mVmin<br>(dm)         M         10.3 (470)         11.1 (382)           Air Flow Rate         mVmin<br>(dm)         M         10.3 (470)         11.1 (382)           Fan         Type         Cross Flow Fan (With Saw Edgs)         3.3 (283)           Fan         Speed         Steps         5.8 (264)           Speed         Steps         5.8 (264)         Auto           Air Direction Control         Air Prection Control         Removable / Wahable / Midew Prod         Auto+0.40           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         Outo-0.19-0.18           Power Fastor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temerature Control         Midew Prod         40-40-40           Dimensions (HwWcD)         mm         280-6656x378           Weight         kg         20         Operation           Mider Output         kg         20         Operation           Model         44/387/328/26         44/387/31/28           Sound Power         H         dBA  | Amount of Add    | ditional Charge   | a/m   | Charge            | less                |  |  |
| Front Panel Color         While           Air Flow Rate         militin         H         13.3 (470)         14.0 (494)           Air Flow Rate         militin         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (302)           L         7.3 (258)         8.3 (233)         7.3 (256)           Fan         Motor Output         W         57           Air Filter         Cross Row Fan (With Saw Edge)         67           Air Filter         Refroxable / Netizontal, Downward         7.3 (256)           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Foxor         %         90-915-92.6         90-915-92.6           Power Foxor         %         90-915-92.6         90-915-92.6           Power Foxor         %         90-915-92.6         90-915-92.6           Premerature Control         Dmmn         269x489x/309         90-915-92.6           Premerature Control         mm         269x489x/309         90-915-92.6           Consumption (Rated)         kg         20         20           Operation         kg         20         20           Consumption         Mile Mach         40.37/29/26         44/38/31/28           Conder Owerit         kg         20  | ů.               |                   | 9/11  |                   |                     |  |  |
| Air Flow Rate         PMmin<br>(dm)         H         13.3 (470)         14.0 (494)           Air Flow Rate         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (962)           Fan         SE         6.5 (230)         7.3 (258)           Speed         Step         Cross Flow Fan (With Saw Edge)           Air Diraction Control         W         5           Air Diraction Control         Removable / Midew Proof           Air Filter         Removable / Midew Proof           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-019-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-04-04           Power Consumption (Rated)         M         0.20-019-0.18           Conso Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg<   |                  | •                 |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Air Flow Rate         m <sup>thy</sup> min<br>(dm)         M         10.3 (364)         11.1 (392)           Air Flow Rate         Figure         7.3 (258)         8.8 (283)         8.3 (283)           Fan         Type         Cross Flow Pan (With Saw Edge)         7.3 (258)         8.3 (283)           Air Direction Courtol         W         57         5 Steps, Outer, Auto         57           Air Direction Control         Refut, Lett, Horizontal, Downward         7.3 (258)         8.3 (283)           Air Direction Control         Refut, Lett, Horizontal, Downward         8.4 (283)         6.5 Steps, Outer, Auto           Air Filter         0.20-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Factor         %         9.0-9.15.92.6         90.9-91.5.92.6         90.9-91.5.92.6           Temperature Control         mm         305x490-209         90.9.91.5.92.6         90.9.91.5.92.6           Dimensions (H-WMCD)         mm         305x490-209         90.9.91.5.92.6         90.9.91.5.92.6           Dimensions (H-WMCD)         mm         3030x490-804         40.40.40         90.9.91.5.92.6           Sound Power (H         Mg         20         90.9.91.5.92.6         90.9.91.5.92.6         90.9.91.5.92.6           Contreaveretave         <   | Front Panel C    | olor              |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Ar How Rete         L         7.3 (288)         8.3 (283)           Fan         SL         6.5 (230)         7.3 (258)           Fan         SL         6.5 (230)         7.3 (258)           Ar Direction Control         W         567           Ar Direction Control         Reprovable / Multh Saw Edge)         Resp. Quiet, Auto           Ar Direction Control         Removable / Multow Proof         Removable / Multow Proof           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-04-04         40-04-04           Power Consumption (Rated)         M         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         M         0.40-040         40-04-04           Properator         %         90-9-91.5-92.6         90-9-91.5-92.6           Properator         Microcomputer Control         Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         200-065378         Weight           Sound         Veight         kg         60         60           Outdoor Unit         Kg         Removalue Sealed Swing Type         Compose           Outdoor Unit         Wool         1.00  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{tabular}{ c c c c c } \hline L & 1.3 (288) & 8.3 (283) & 7.3 (288) & 7.3 &$  | Air Flow Rate    |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Type         Cross Row Fan (Mth Saw Edge)           Fan         Moto Output         W           Speed         Steps         5 Steps, Quiet, Auto           Air Direction Control         Removable / Washable / Mickew Prod           Air Filter         Removable / Washable / Mickew Prod           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.200.190.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Consumption (Rated)         M         40-40-40         40-40-40           Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         305x990-209         20           Packaged Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         200x90/209         20           Sound         Casing Color         Nordy White         60         20           Casing Color         HMMUSL         BA         44/37/29/26   |                  | (ctm)             |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Fan         Meter Output         W         97           Speed         Steps         5 Steps, Quiet, Auto           Air Direction Control         Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward           Air Filter         Removable / Washable / Mickew Proof           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.200-19-0.18         0.200-19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90-9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         305x890-209           Packaged Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         280.9656x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation Start         Kg         40437/29/26         44/38/31/28           Sound Power         H         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RXRSDEV1B         KRSDEV1B         KRSDEV1B           Compressor         Model         27/36CXD         44/38/31/28           Model         27/36CXD         60         60           Model         27/36CXD         60         60           Refrigerant         Model         1.100         Refr  |                  |                   | SL    |                   |                     |  |  |
| Speed         Steps         5 Steps           Air Direction Control         Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward         Air Filter           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.200.019-0.18         0.200.019.0.18           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.200.019-0.18         0.200.019.0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         mm         305:x890x209         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (H-WixD)         mm         200         20           Operation         kg         20         44/38/31/28           Sound         HML/SL         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         Kg         20         20           Coperation         Kodel         20/2000         60           Outdoor Unit         Kg         20         60           Casing Color         Nodel         7/20         1/00           Corpresor         Model         20/2000         60           Corpresor         Model   |                  |                   |       |                   | Vith Saw Edge)      |  |  |
| Air Direction Control         Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward           Air Filter         Removable / Washable / Middew Proof           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         3053690x209         90.9-91.5-92.6           Packaged Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         3053690x209         90.9-91.5-92.6           Construction         Microcomputer Control         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (H-WMD)         mm         3053690x209         90.9-91.5-92.6           Construction         Microcomputer Control         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Operation         kg         20         90         90         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Construction         Midel         44         30.0         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         60         6   | Fan              |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Air Filter         Removable / Washable / Middew Proof           Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-019-0.18         0.20-019-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control         Microcomputer Control           Dimensions (HAWAD)         mm         305x890x209           Packaged Dimensions (HAWAD)         mm         200x956x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         BAA         44/37/29/26         44/38/31/28           Sound Power H         dBA         60         60           Outoor Unit         RKS0EV1B         Kode         20           Corpressor         Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type         20           Corpressor         Type         Noto // NWite         60         60           Corpressor         Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type         20           Corpressor         Type         0.4         1,100           Refrigerant         Model         0.4         1.4           Ch   |                  |                   | Steps |                   |                     |  |  |
| Running Current (Rated)         A         0.20-0.19-0.18         0.20-0.19-0.18           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control         000-901.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (HxWxDD)         mm  |                  | Control           |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Power Consumption (Rated)         W         40-40-40         40-40-40           Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control         90.9-91.5-92.6           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         305x890x209           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         280x896x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         MiXLSL         dBA           Sound         HML/SL         dBA           Gross Weight         kg         60           Sound Power H         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RXR50EV1B         60         60           Compressor         Model         2YC36CXD         60           Model         2YC36CXD         1,100         60           Refrigerant         Model         FVC50K         60           Model         Refrigerant         Model         60         60           Model         Refrigerant         Model         850         810           Fan         Type         Refrigerant         862         1.4         7.4   |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Power Factor         %         90.9-91.5-92.6         90.9-91.5-92.6           Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control         Microcomputer Control           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         305:890x209           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         280x956x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         H/ML/SL         dBA         44/38/31/28           Sound Power         H         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RX550EV1B         000000000000000000000000000000000000  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Temperature Control         Microcomputer Control           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         305x890x209           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         280x956x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         HMU/SL         dBA         44/38/31/28           Sound         HMU/SL         dBA         60         60           Outdor Unit         BA         60         60         60           Casing Color         Ivark Spectv18         60         60         60           Congrege         V         100         60         60         60           Congrege         V         Nodel         2VC38CXD         60 </td <td></td> <td>mption (Rated)</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>   |                  | mption (Rated)    |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Dimensions (HxWkD)         mm         305x890x209           Packaged Dimensions (HxWkD)         mm         280x956x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation<br>Sound         H/MUSL         dBA         44/37/29/26         44/38/31/28           Sound Power H         dBA         60         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RXRS0EV1B         60         60         60           Cosing Color         Ivory White         60         60         60           Compressor         Model         2YC36CXD         60         60           Model         2YC36CXD         60         60         60           Model         2YC36CXD         60         60         60           Model         2YC36CXD         60         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02         7.2-7.11-7.02  |                  |                   | %     |                   |                     |  |  |
| Packaged Dimensions (H-WWxD)         mm         280x956x378           Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         H/ML/SL         dBA         44/37/29/26         44/38/31/28           Sound Power         H         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RXRS0EV1B         Casing Color         Novy White           Compressor         Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type           Compressor         Model         2YC36CXD           Model         FVCS0K         1100           Refrigerant         Model         FVCS0K           ArF low Rate         m <sup>M</sup> min         36.2         34.3           drim         850         810         810           Fan         Type         Propeller         800           Motor Output         W         60         20.4/70.1/470.1/470           Refigerant         Motor Output         W         60         810           Fan         Type         92.8.93.96.8         92.8.9.97.3         34.3           drim         850         810         7.2.7.11.7.02         1.4/70.1/470.1/470.1/470           Power Factor         %  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Weight         kg         14           Gross Weight         kg         20           Operation         H/ML/SL         dBA         44/37/29/26           Sound Dower         H         dBA         60           Sound Power         H         dBA         60           Outdoor Unit         RXR50EV1B         60           Compressor         Type         Nory White           Compressor         Model         2/2/36/20           Model         2/2/36/20         2/2/36/20           Model         FV/CS0K         0/4           Charge         L         0.4           Refrigerant         Model         R+110A           Charge         kg         1.4           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>3</sup> min         36.2         34.3           dfm         36.2         34.3         810           Type         Propeller         810         810           Fan         Type         Propeller         810           Power Consumption (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Factor         % <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="3"></td></td<>  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $  | 0                | nensions (H×W×D)  |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Operation<br>Sound         H/ML/SL         dBA         44/37/29/26         44/38/31/28           Sound Power         H         dBA         60         60           Outdoor Unit         RKR50EV1B         000         000           Casing Color         Ivory White         100         60           Model         2YC36CXD         100         Refreserant           Model         PVCSOK         0.4         0.4           Charge         L         0.4         0.4           Refrigerant         Model         R-410A         0.4           Charge         L         0.4         0.4           Air Flow Rate<br>(HH)         Model         850         34.3           dfm         36.2         34.3           dfm         850         810           Fan         Type         Propeller           Motor Output         W         1.420-1.420           Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2.7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1.420-1.420         1.470-1.470-1.470           Power Satury (Rated)         M         7.4         000-0000           Dimensions (HxWXD)         mm         736:935:410 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td colspan="2"></td>  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| SoundMWDSLBDA444/31/29/20444/30/129Sound PowerHdBA6060RXRSDEV1BCasing ColorRXRSDEV1BCompressoModel01/2ModelW2YC36CKDModelW1,100RefrigerantModel0.4ModelR.410A8.410AChargeL0.4RefrigerantModel6.2ModelR.410AChargekg1.4Air Flow Rate<br>(H*)7.27.11-7.02PanTypePropellerRunning Current (Rated)M7.4Dimensions (H-WxD)mmPower Consumption (Rated)W1.4Air Flow Rate<br>(H*)7.42.889.987.3Starting CurrentA7.4Dimensions (H-WxD)mmPackaged Dimensions (H-WxD)mmMedig6.2Qoeration<br>Sound PowerHdBABalance<br>Sound Power7.4Dimensions (H-WxD)Sound PowerHdBABalance<br>Conserved5.5Operation<br>Sound PowerHermetically AA6.26.2ConservedA7.4 <tr< td=""><td>•</td><td></td><td>kg</td><td>20</td><td></td></tr<>   | •                |                   | kg    | 20                |                     |  |  |
| Sound Power         H         dBA         60         60           Outdor Unit         RXRS0EV1B         RXRS0EV1B           Casing Color         Ivory White         Ivory White           Compressor         Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type           Model         2YC36CXD         Nory White           Model         2YC36CXD         Nory White           Model         100         Refrigerant Orligation         Model         FVC50K           Model         0.4         FVC50K         0.4         Refrigerant Orligation         Model         Refrigerant Orligation         Model         Refrigerant Orligation         Model         Refrigerant Orligation         Model         36.2         34.3           Fan         Type         Model         850         810         810           Fan         Type         Propeller         810         810           Fan         Type         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4         92.8-89.9-87.3         92.8-89.9-87.3           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285         92.8-89.9-87.3           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285 <th< td=""><td></td><td>H/M/L/SL</td><td>dBA</td><td>44/37/29/26</td><td>44/38/31/28</td></th<>  |                  | H/M/L/SL          | dBA   | 44/37/29/26       | 44/38/31/28         |  |  |
| Outdoor Unit         RXR50EV1B           Casing Color         Ivory White           Compressor         Model         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type           Compressor         Model         2VC36CXD           Model         1.100         Refrigerant           Oll         Charge         L           Charge         L         0.4           Refrigerant         Model         R-410A           Charge         kg         1.4           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>3</sup> /min         36.2           (H1)         dfm         850         810           Fan         Type         0         810           Fan         Type         92.269.386.8         92.88.9.87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4         100           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1.420-1.420-1.420         1.470-1.470-1.470           Power Factor         %         92.2.89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3         Starting Current           A         0         7.4         0         1.470-1.470         1.470-1.470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3         Starting Current         A         693x795x285         92.8-89.9  |                  | н                 | dBA   | 60                | 60                  |  |  |
| Casing Color         Nory White           Compressor         Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type           Model         2YC36CXD           Model         1,100           Refrigerant         Model         FVC50K           Oll         Charge         L           Charge         L         0.4           Refrigerant         Model         R-410A           Charge         kg         1.4           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>3</sup> /min         36.2         34.3           (HH)         dfm         850         810           Fan         Type         Propeller           Motor Output         W         0.6.21         2.7.11.7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1.420-1.420         1.470-1.470-1.470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4         2.8-89.9-87.3           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285         92.8-89.9-87.3           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285         92.8-89.9-87.3           <   |                  |                   | dbrt  |                   |                     |  |  |
| Type         Hermetically Sealed Swing Type           Compressor         Model         2YC36CXD           Motor Output         W         1,100           Refrigerant<br>Ol         Model         FVC50K           Charge         L         0.4           Refrigerant<br>Ol         Model         R-410A           Charge         Kg         1.4           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>3</sup> /min         36.2           fm         850         810           Fan         Type         Propeller           Motor Output         W         60           Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420-1,420         1,470-1,47  |                  | •                 |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Compressor         Model         2YC36CXD           Motor Output         W         1,100           Refrigerant         Model         FVC50K           Oll         Charge         L           Model         0.4           Refrigerant         Model           Model         R-410A           Charge         kg           Air Flow Rate         m <sup>3</sup> /min           dfm         36.2           dfm         850           fm         850           fm         850           fm         850           fm         850           fm         850           Popeller           Motor Output         W           fm         850           fm         92.889.987.3           fm         92.889.987.3           Starting Current         A           power Factor         %           92.889.987.3         92.889.987.3           Starting Current         A           A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm           max         736x935x410           Weight         kg           Gross Weight <t< td=""><td>eaching each</td><td>Type</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>  | eaching each     | Type              |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{tabular}{ c c c c c c } \hline Motor Output & W & 1,100 \\ \hline Model & FVC50K \\ \hline Charge & L & 0.4 \\ \hline Charge & L & 0.4 \\ \hline Charge & kg & 0.4 \\ \hline Charge & kg & 1.4 \\ \hline Charge & kg & 1.4 \\ \hline Charge & kg & 0.4 \\ \hline Charge $                  | Compressor       |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $   |                  |                   | W     | 1.10              | 0                   |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c } \hline Charge & L & 0.4 \\ \hline Refrigerant & \hline Model & R-410A \\ \hline Charge & kg & 1.4 \\ \hline Charge & K$ | Refrigerant      | 1                 |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $   |                  |                   | L     |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $   | D.C.             | •                 |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Air Flow Rate<br>(HH)         m³/min         36.2         34.3           fm         36.2         810           Fan         Type         850         810           Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420         1,470-1,470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation Sound         H         dBA         48           Sound Power         H         dBA         62   | Retrigerant      |                   | kq    |                   |                     |  |  |
| (HH)         cfm         850         810           Fan         Type         Propeller           Motor Output         W         60           Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420-1,420         1,470-1,470           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420         1,470-1,470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation Sound         H         dBA         48           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  | Air Flow Rate    | <b>v</b>          |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $   |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Fan         Dotor Output         W         60           Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420.1         1,470-1,470.1           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420.1         1,470-1,470.1           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation         H         dBA         48         50           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64   | -                |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Running Current (Rated)         A         7.0-6.91-6.82         7.2-7.11-7.02           Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420-1,420         1,470-1,470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation         H         dBA         48           Sound         H         dBA         62         64  | ⊦an              |                   | W     |                   |                     |  |  |
| Power Consumption (Rated)         W         1,420-1,420-1,420         1,470-1,470           Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation         H         dBA         48           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  | Running Curre    |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Power Factor         %         92.2-89.3-86.8         92.8-89.9-87.3           Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation         H         dBA         48           Sound         H         dBA         62         64  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Starting Current         A         7.4           Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation Sound         H         dBA         48           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64   |                  |                   | %     | 92.2-89.3-86.8    |                     |  |  |
| Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         693x795x285           Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation Sound         H         dBA         48           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  | Starting Current |                   |       | 7.4               | -                   |  |  |
| Packaged Dimensions (HxWxD)         mm         736x935x410           Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation<br>Sound         H         dBA         48         50           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Weight         kg         48           Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation<br>Sound         H         dBA         48         50           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64   |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Gross Weight         kg         55           Operation<br>Sound         H         dBA         48         50           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  | Weight           |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Operation<br>Sound         H         dBA         48         50           Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64   |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
| Sound Power         H         dBA         62         64  | Operation        |                   |       | 48                | 50                  |  |  |
|  |                  |                   |       |                   |                     |  |  |
|  | Drawing No.      | T.,               | UDA   |                   |                     |  |  |

Note:

The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

| The data are based on the co                      |  |               |   |
|---|--|---------------|---|
| Cooling   | Heating                                  | Piping Length | Conversion Formulae                               |
| Indoor ; 27°CDB/19°CWB<br>Outdoor ; 35°CDB/24°CWB | Indoor ; 20°CDB<br>Outdoor ; 7°CDB/6°CWB | 7.5m          | kcal/h=kWx860<br>Btu/h=kWx3414<br>cfm=m³/minx35.3 |

## Part 3 Printed Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram

| 1. | Print | ed Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram | .8 |
|----|-------|---|----|
|    |       | Indoor Unit                               |    |
|    | 1.2   | Outdoor Unit                              | 10 |

# Printed Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram Indoor Unit

#### Connectors

#### A1P (Control PCB)

| 1) S1 | Connector for fan motor |
|-------|-------------------------|
| 1) 31 |                         |

- 2) S21 Connector for centralized control (HA)
- 3) S32 Connector for heat exchanger thermistor (R1T)
- 4) S41, S51 Connector for swing motor (horizontal, vertical)
- 5) S43 Connector for solenoid valve
- 6) S46 Connector for display PCB
- 7) S48 Connector for humidity sensor PCB
- 8) S51 Connector for reduction motor, limit switch (front panel)
- 9) S52 Connector for streamer unit

#### A2P (Display PCB)

| 1) | S56       | Connector for control PCB                       |
|----|-----------|---|
| 2) | S57       | Connector for signal receiver / transmitter PCB |
| 3) | S63 (H1P) | Connector for LED PCB (multi monitor)           |

#### A3P (Signal Receiver/Transmitter PCB)

1) S58 Connector for display PCB

#### A4P (Humidity Sensor PCB)

1) CN1 Connector for control PCB

#### A5P (High Voltage Unit PCB)

| 1) S401 Connector for contro | ol PCB |
|------------------------------|--------|
|------------------------------|--------|

- 2) S402 Connector for limit switch for streamer
- 3) S403 Connector for streamer



#### Other designations

#### A1P (Control PCB)

1) V1

| Varistor |
|----------|
|          |

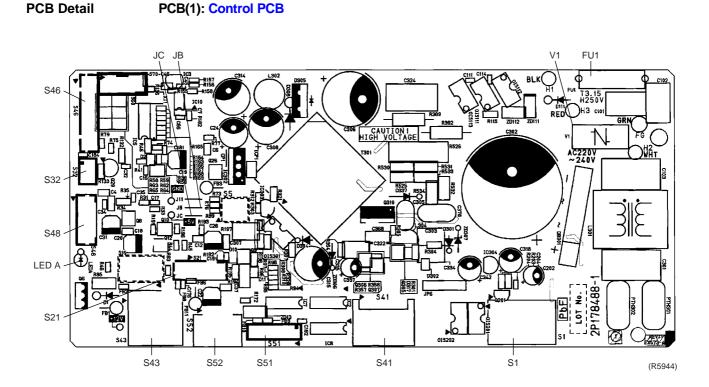
- 2) FU1 Fuse (3.15A)
- 3) LED A LED for service monitor (green)
- 4) JB Fan speed setting when compressor is OFF on thermostat
   JC Power failure recovery function (auto-restart)
   \*Refer to page 300 for detail.

#### A2P (Display PCB)

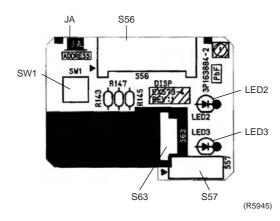
- 1) JA Address setting jumper
- 2) SW1 Forced operation ON / OFF switch
- 3) LED2 LED for timer (yellow)
- 4) LED3 LED for moisture operation (green)

#### A4P (Humidity Sensor PCB)

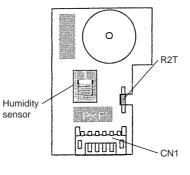
1) R2T Room temperature thermistor



#### PCB(2): Display PCB

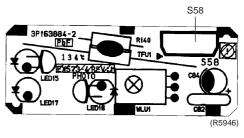


PCB(4): Humidity sensor PCB

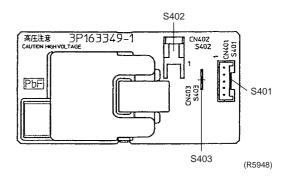


(R5947)

#### PCB(3): Signal Receiver / Transmitter PCB



#### PCB(5): High Voltage Unit PCB



### 1.2 Outdoor Unit

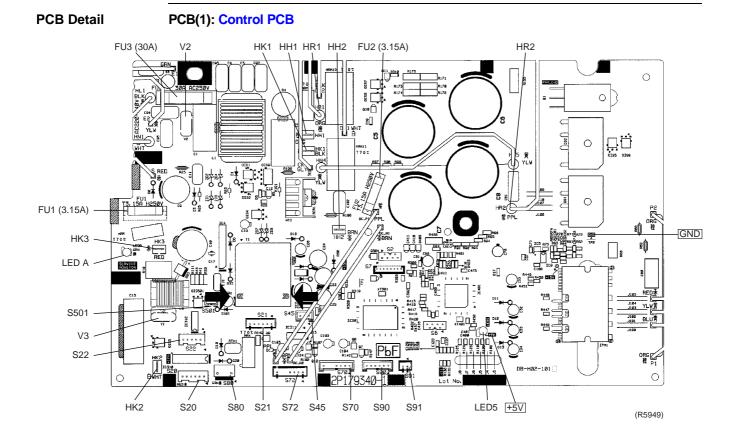
#### Connectors

| 1) S20           | Connector for electronic expansion valve coil                      |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| 2) S21           | Connector for rotor motor  |  |
| 3) S22           | Connector for damper motor   |  |
| 4) S45           | Connector for thermal fuse   |  |
| 5) S70           | Connector for DC fan motor   |  |
| 6) S72           | Connector for humidification fan motor                             |  |
| 7) S80           | Connector for four way valve coil                                  |  |
| 8) S90           | Connector for thermistor (outdoor, heat exchanger, discharge pipe) |  |
| 9) S91           | Connector for humidifying thermistor                               |  |
| 10)S501          | Connector for limit switch   |  |
| 11)HR1, HR2      | Connector for reactor  |  |
| 12)HK1, HK2, HK3 | Connector for fan motor  |  |
| 13)HH1, HH2      | Connector for heater   |  |



e: Other designations

| 1) FU1, FU2    | Fuse (3.15A)                    |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 2) FU3         | Fuse (30A)                      |
| 3) V2, V3      | Varistor                        |
| 4) LED A, LED5 | LED for service monitor (green) |

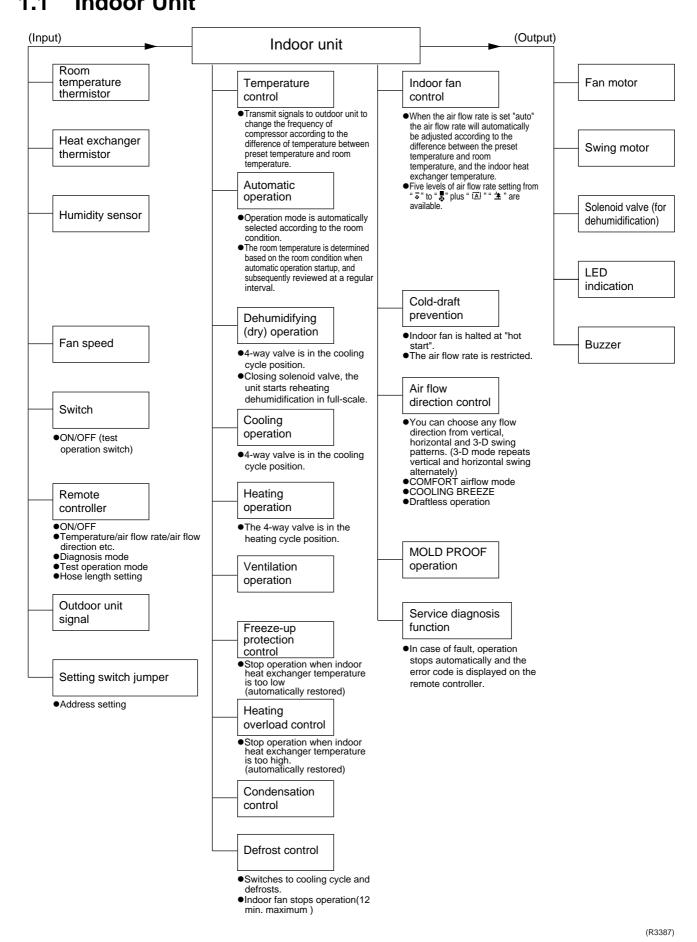


# Part 4 Function and Control

| 1. | Desc | cription of Operation                         | .15 |
|----|------|---|-----|
|    | 1.1  | Indoor Unit                                   |     |
|    | 1.2  | Outdoor Unit                                  | .16 |
| 2  | Mair | Functions                                     | .17 |
|    | 2.1  | "URURU" Humidifying / Humid Heating Operation |     |
|    | 2.2  | "SARARA" Drying Operation                     |     |
|    | 2.3  | Comfort Sleep Operation                       |     |
|    | 2.4  | MOISTURIZING Operation                        |     |
|    | 2.5  | Automatic Operation                           |     |
|    | 2.6  | Comfort Airflow Mode                          |     |
|    | 2.7  | Cooling Breeze Operation                      |     |
|    | 2.8  | Power-airflow Dual Flaps                      |     |
|    | 2.9  | Wide-angle Louvers                            |     |
|    | -    | 3-D Airflow                                   |     |
|    |      | POWERFUL Operation                            |     |
|    |      | Indoor Unit Quiet Operation                   |     |
|    |      | Multi-colored Indicator Lamp                  |     |
|    |      | Monitor Brightness Setting                    |     |
|    |      | Information Display                           |     |
|    |      | MOLD PROOF Operation                          |     |
|    |      | Mold Proof Stick                              |     |
|    |      | MOLD SHOCK Operation                          |     |
|    |      | HOME LEAVE Ventilation                        |     |
|    |      | FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING Operation        |     |
|    |      | Fresh Air Supply Ventilation                  |     |
|    |      | Wipe-clean Flat Panel                         |     |
|    |      | Filter Cleaning Indicator (Remote Controller) |     |
|    |      | TIMER Operation                               |     |
|    |      | Night Set Mode                                |     |
|    |      | Table for Special Modes                       |     |
|    |      | Thermostat Control                            |     |
|    | 2.28 | Fan Speed Control for Indoor Units            | .59 |
|    | 2.29 | Draft Prevention (HOT Start)                  | .61 |
| 3. | Cont | rol Specification                             | .62 |
| •  | 3.1  | Frequency Control                             |     |
|    | 3.2  | Preheating Operation (Quick Warming Function) |     |
|    | 3.3  | Four-way Valve Operation                      |     |
|    | 3.4  | Compressor Start up Protection                |     |
|    | 3.5  | Fan Speed Control for Outdoor Unit            |     |
|    | 3.6  | Fin Thermistor Control                        |     |
|    | 3.7  | Input Current Control                         |     |
|    | 3.8  | Peak-cut Control                              |     |
|    | 3.9  | Indoor Coil Freeze up Protection              |     |
|    |      | Dew Prevention                                |     |
|    |      | Liquid Compression Protection 2               |     |
|    |      |   |     |

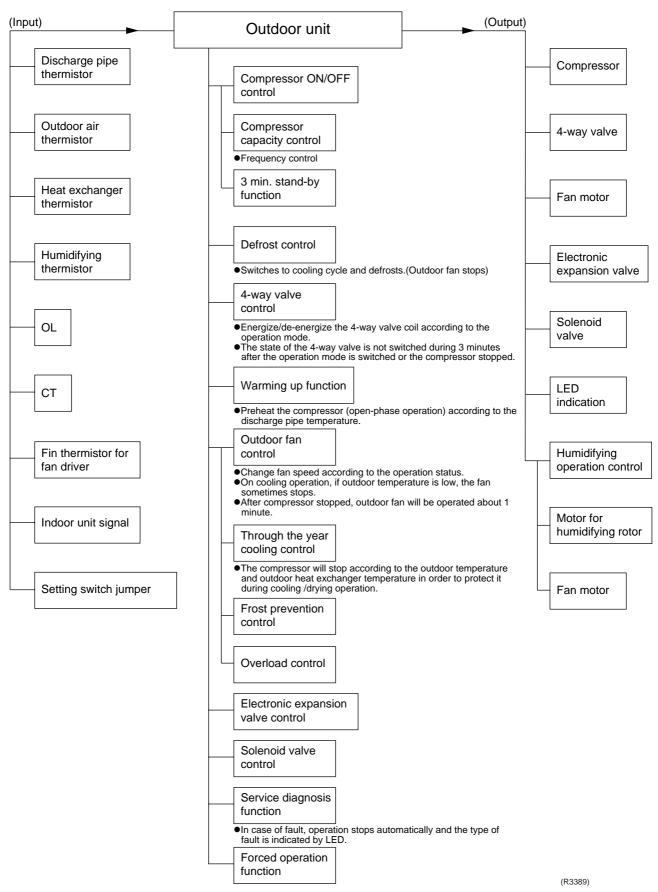
| 3.12 Discharge Pipe Temperature Control | 72 |
|---|----|
| 3.13 Automatic Defrosting               | 73 |
| 3.14 Electronic Expansion Valve Control |    |

### 1. Description of Operation 1.1 Indoor Unit



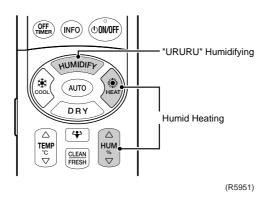
Function and Control

### 1.2 Outdoor Unit



# 2. Main Functions2.1 "URURU" Humidifying / Humid Heating Operation

#### Operation



\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

#### A world first new humidifying method has adopted

What is new in this method is to intake vapor in the outdoor air with the hygroscopic element mounted in outdoor unit, and send indoors. This has enabled powerful and speedy humidification apart from other company's methods which just absorb moisture in the indoor air.



■ The room is uniformly humidified.

• Humidifier + heating operation by air conditioner

Moisture gathers around the ceiling, as it is lighter than the air even if the humidifier is operated. The air on the floor is kept dry.



When using humidifier, moisture gathers around the ceiling. (R3325)

"Humid heating" by URURU / SARARA

This air conditioner enables uniformly humidifying the room by circulating vapor with warm air.



The room is uniformly humidified.

#### Powerful humidifying ability

The humidifying capacity is 450 ml/h (5.0 kW class) and equivalent to that of a normal humidifier.

| Model                | FTXR28E | FTXR42E | FTXR50E |
|----------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Humidifying Capacity | 400ml/h | 425ml/h | 450ml/h |

The values above are measured at  $7^{\circ}C$  DB /  $6^{\circ}C$  WB of outdoor air and with 7.5 m of humidifying hose length.

No need for water supply nor cleaning

Water supply and cleaning are unnecessary as it does not have water tank, unlike humidifiers, and there is no proliferations of bacteria.

#### Humidity control

The FTXR-E series model performs the humidifying operation, targeting the humidity level of 40 to 50%.

(You can select the remote controller setting from Low, Standard, High and Continue. The target humidity (%) cannot be set.)



- When the outdoor temperature and humidity are low, the humidifying capacity is decreased. In addition, the moisture in the room may not attain sufficient humidity when the ventilation volume is high, the preset temperature is high, or the preset humidity is HIGH.
- After the "humid heating" operation starts, the relative humidity in the room lowers temporarily. This phenomenon is caused by the increase of the saturation water vapor. Therefore, the humidity raises gradually after the temperature reaches the preset temperature.
- In the humidifying operation, the operation sound increases by about 2 dB both in the indoor and outdoor units. (When the air flow rate is in L or SL, the operation sound increases by about 3 dB in the indoor unit.)
- This system does not suppose the storage of musical instruments or the like.

Conditions for Humidifying Operation While heating mode, humidifying operation can be available when the following conditions 1~5 are met at the same time.

- 1. Indoor heat exchanger temperature is 12°C or more.
- Outdoor temperature is from -10°C to 24°C (meanwhile, in test operation, up to 34°C is possible). Humidifying operation does not work under -10°C.
- 3. Approx. 1 minute has already passed after heating operation startup. (See Note.)
- 4. Heating operation does not work to its full capacity. (Meanwhile, the "continuous" humidification is selected, humidifying operation has the priority.)
- 5. Room humidity is under 70%RH.



Exclude the case when it is recovered from thermostat-off or when the defrosting operation finished.

| How to Check the<br>Motion of | You can check whether the humidifying unit is in good working order. If you set "the humidifying only test operation" (refer to the installation manual for details), you can check even beyond the |  |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Humidifying                   | range of the conditions for humidifying operation mentioned above.  |  |  |
| Operation                     | <ol> <li>Hygroscopic fan Air is exhaled from the front exhaust outlet of outdoor unit.</li> <li>Humidifying fan/heater/damper Warm air is blown from the duct of outdoor unit.</li> </ol>           |  |  |
|                               |   |  |  |

3. Humidification rotor ...... The rotor is rotating with top panel off.

As for the performance, estimate from psychrometric chart with the measured temperature and humidity of the outdoor air and of the humidified air (in front of the indoor outlet) using thermal hygrometer.

| Performance class | Air flow rate (m <sup>3</sup> /min) |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 2.8kW             | 0.40                                |
| 4.2, 5.0kW        | 0.44                                |

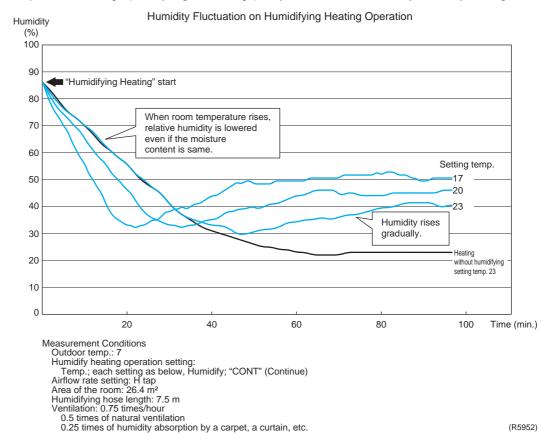
#### Humidity Fluctuation by Temperature Settings

At Humidifying Heating Operation, as room temperature rises, relative humidity is temporarily lowered. This is because as room temperature rises, relative humidity is lowered even if the moisture content is the same.

e.g.) The rise in the room temperature from 15°C to 25°C will result in the rise in humidity from 40%RH to about 22%RH.

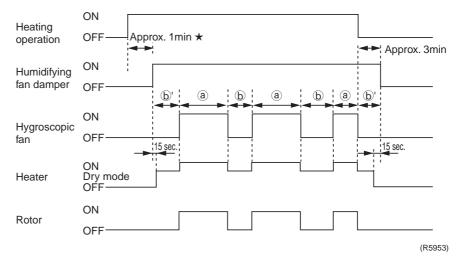
As humidifying operation starts concurrently with heating, humidity rises gradually as shown in the figure below.

Some room conditions (floor space, ventilation frequency, number of residents, etc.) and temperature settings (mostly higher settings) may result in unsatisfactory humidity settings.



#### Time chart for humidifying operation control

Approx. 1min. after heating operation start up, it repeats humidifying and drying alternately (to protect condensation for inside the hose).



| (a). Humidifying time |                  | Decide time according to the outdoor temperature and hose length set by remote controller. |
|-----------------------|------------------|--|
| (b). Drying time      | Approx. 2~10min. | Decide time according to the hose length set by  |
| (b)'. Drying time     | Approx. 2~10min. | remote controller.   |

★ "Humidifying only operation" has no 1min-delay, it immediately starts up from ⓑ', and works in the same sequence as others .

#### Time chart for "humidifying only test operation"

"Humidifying only test operation" on trial mode works in the same sequence as humidifying operation, but about 30 min. later it automatically stops.

#### Remarks

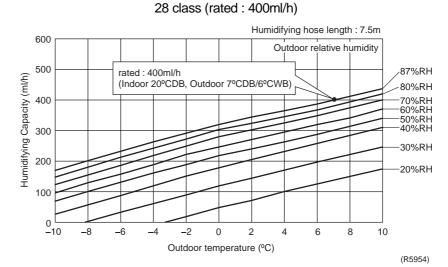
- 1. When a room is spacious such as loft style or partitioned by accordion style curtain, the ventilation volume is large and may not sometimes reach the set humidity.
- 2. When room temperature falls (12°C or lower), though "humidifying only test operation" is functionally possible, humidifying heating operation continues to keep room temperature.

#### Humidification performance by outdoor temperature

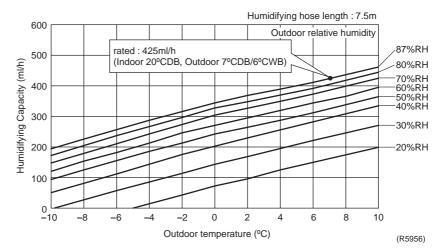
The humidifying of this system is different from that of the normal humidifier. Therefore, the humidifying performance varies with the outdoor temperature or installation condition. Sufficient humidifying capacity may not be attained depending on the weather condition in operation.

When the outdoor temperature lowers by 5°C, the humidifying capacity is decreased by about 15%.

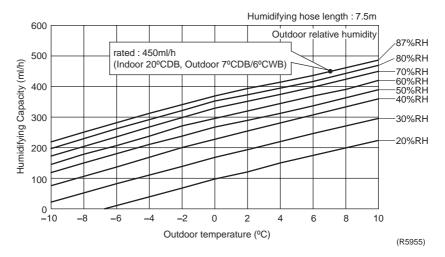
When the outdoor humidity lowers by 20%, the humidifying capacity is decreased by about 20%.



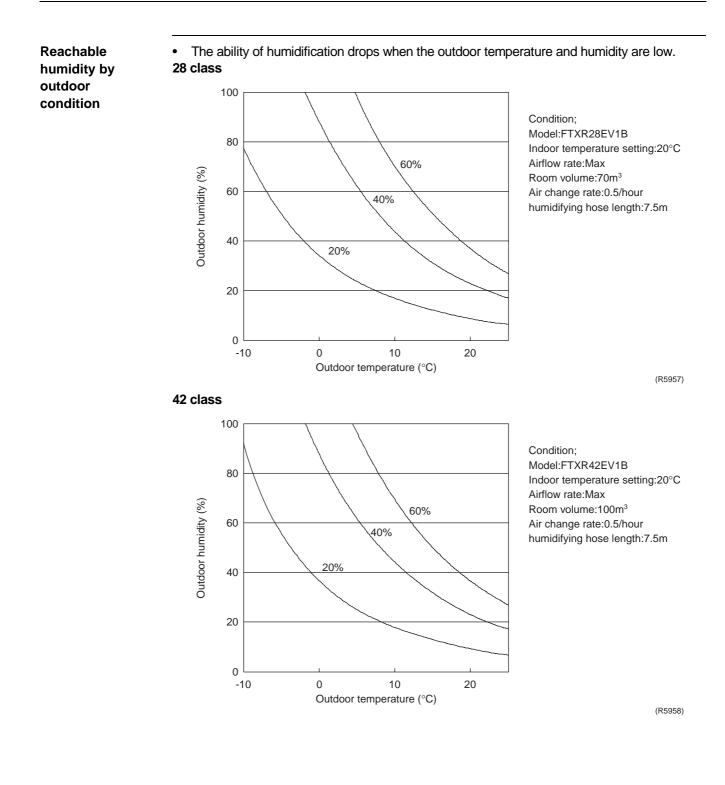
42 class (rated : 425ml/h)



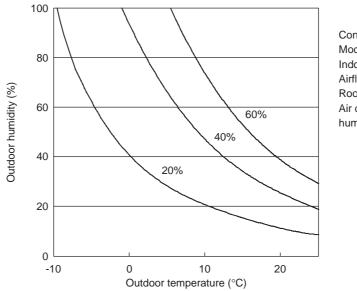
50 class (rated : 450ml/h)



Function and Control



50 class



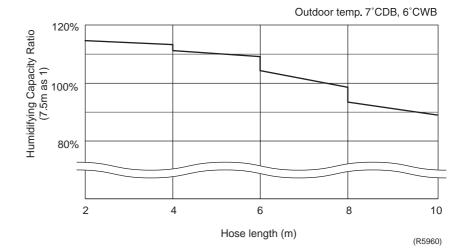
Condition; Model:FTXR50EV1B Indoor temperature setting:20°C Airflow rate:Max Room volume:120m<sup>3</sup> Air change rate:0.5/hour humidifying hose length:7.5m

(R5959)

#### Performance compensation by hose length

The max. piping length is set to 10 m, but the humidifying performance varies with the length of the humidifying hose.

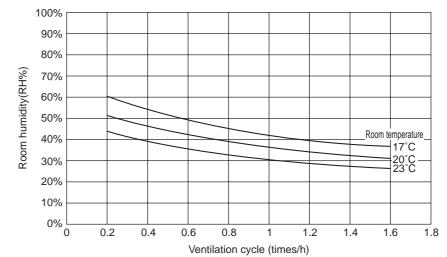
When the hose length increases by 2 m, the humidifying capacity decreases by about 10%.



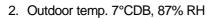
#### Reference

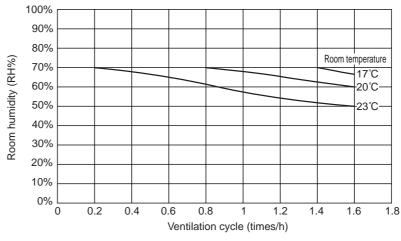
 Room humidity (discharged air humidity) by ventilation cycle (16m<sup>2</sup>, hose length: 4m, 28 class)

1. Outdoor temp. 0°CDB, 50% RH

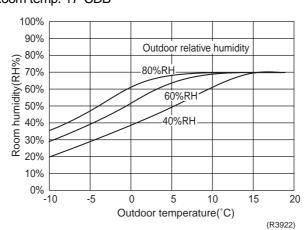






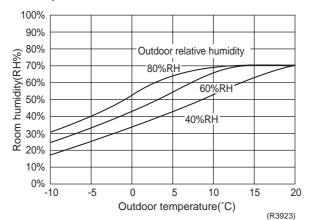


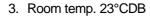
(R5088)

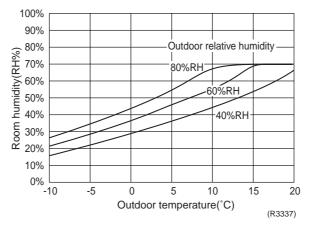


Room humidity (discharged air humidity) by outdoor temperature (16m<sup>2</sup>, hose length: 4m, ventilation cycle: 0.75 times/h, 28 class)
 1. Room temp. 17°CDB



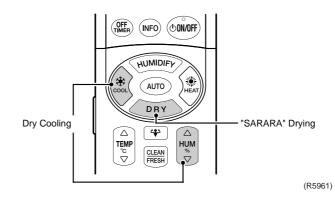






# 2.2 "SARARA" Drying Operation

### Operation

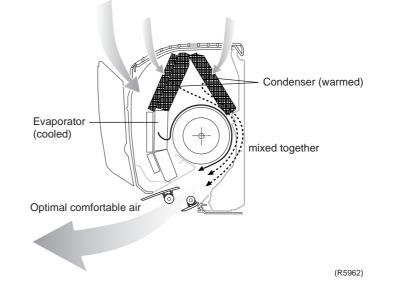


\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

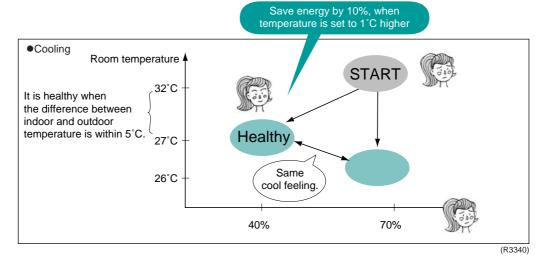
### Reheating dehumidifying method is applied.

Powerful evaporator eliminates the humidity in your room exclusively. Dry cool air is mixed with warm air from the reheater, thereby blowing in optimal and comfortable dry air.



### Adjustable at your preferred humidity even on cooling

You can get comfortable coolness even with the moderate cooling because you can adjust the indoor humidity as you like. By decreasing temperature difference to outdoors, it enabled to avoid a heat shock. It is recommended for ladies and elders who are sensitive to cooling and for families with a baby as well as energy saving.

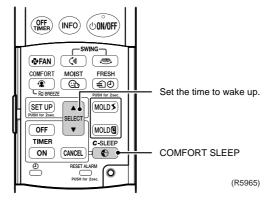


### Differences on "dehumidification" and "cooling dehumidification" operation

|   | "SARARA" Drying   | Dry Cooling   |  |  |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| Method  | Puts a pressure reducing device (solenoid valve) in<br>the center of the heat exchanger of indoor unit to<br>separate it into upper and lower side. The upper<br>side acts as a condenser to heat the air.                                    | As is the cooling mechanism, the Dry Cooling<br>Operation raises latent heat capacity with<br>controlling sensible heat capacity by adjusting the<br>compressor frequency and indoor air flow rate.   |  |  |
|   | The heat exchanger in the lower perform the usual Dry Cooling Operation to make low-temperature and low-humidity air.   |   |  |  |
|   | The both types of air are mixed to make moderate-<br>temperature and low-humidity air for blowing.  |   |  |  |
| Case by case use<br>for dehumidification<br>and cooling<br>dehumidification | As this is a reheating method, it is recommended in<br>such a case to eliminate humidity without lowering<br>room temperature as possible<br>(this is recommended when cooling load is small).  | The dry cooling does not use reheating method. In<br>order to eliminate humidity, it is recommended to<br>use at the set temperature lowered by several °C<br>from the room temperature at operation starting up<br>(this is recommended when cooling load is large).   |  |  |
| Mechanism   |   |   |  |  |
|   | Outdoor Unit<br>open<br>Heat Exchanger<br>Compressor<br>Solenoid valve for dehumidifying<br>*Pressure is reduced by the gap in<br>the close condition<br>(R5963)  | Outdoor Unit<br>Compressor<br>(R5964)   |  |  |
| 11 11/2 11 -1   |   |   |  |  |
| Humidity adjusting method   | Adjust by operation frequency of the<br>compressor.<br>When operation frequency increases, humidity<br>falls, and when the frequency decreases,<br>humidity fall is suppressed.   | Adjust by operation frequency of the<br>compressor and indoor air flow rate.<br>When operation frequency increases and<br>indoor air flow rate decreases, the humidity<br>falls. When operation frequency decreases and<br>the air flow rate increases, humidity fall is<br>suppressed.   |  |  |
| Room temperature adjusting method   | Adjust by outdoor air flow rate.<br>When outdoor air flow rate increases, room<br>temperature falls, and when it decreases, room<br>temperature fall is suppressed.   | Adjust by operation frequency of the<br>compressor.<br>When operation frequency increases, the room<br>temperature falls, and when operation<br>frequency decreases, the room temperature fall<br>is suppressed.  |  |  |
| Thermostat OFF condition  | When room temperature falls.<br>• Room temp. ≤ preset temp.–2.5<br>or   | When room temperature falls.<br>• Room temp. ≤ preset temp.–2.0<br>or   |  |  |
|   | <ul> <li>Room temp. ≒ preset temp. and the humidity is<br/>lower than target humidity (lower by more than<br/>5%).</li> </ul>   | • Preset temp.–1.5 < room temp. ≤ preset temp.–1.0 continues for 10 min.  |  |  |
| Thermostat OFF $\rightarrow$ ON condition                                   | When thermostat OFF condition is not satisfied  | <ul> <li>Room temp. ≥ preset temp0.5<br/>or<br/>Preset temp1.5 &lt; room temp. ≤ preset temp1.0<br/>continues for 10 min.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| Time to reach the target humidity   | Approx.1hour consecutive as a standard (depending on the conditions)  | Approx.1hour consecutive as a standard (depending on the conditions)  |  |  |
| Remarks<br>(FAQ)  | The humidity does not decrease.<br>According to the load conditions of your room,<br>the temperature sometimes falls and<br>thermostat ON/OFF repeats. As a result, the<br>room may not be dehumidified enough.<br>Set the temperature lower. | The humidity does not decrease. (Thermostat<br>ON/OFF are repeated.)<br>As the reheating method is not used, if you set<br>the temperature close to the room temperature,<br>thermostat ON/OFF are repeated according the<br>load conditions of the room. As a result, the<br>room may not be dehumidified enough. In<br>cooling dehumidification mode, set the<br>temperature lower than the room temperature<br>by several degrees. If you do not want to lower<br>the room temperature too much, reheating<br>dehumidification operation method is<br>recommended. |  |  |

## 2.3 Comfort Sleep Operation

### Operation



- Effective mode for COMFORT SLEEP operation
  - Cooling
  - Dry cooling
  - Moisture cooling
  - Heating
  - · Humid heating
  - Moisture heating

\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

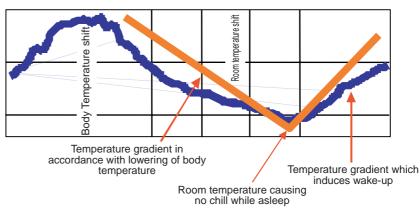
#### Features

#### Outline of function

The temperature is controlled in unique V-shape pattern within the range of about 2°C upper and lower. First the room temperature is gradually lowered at the beginning of sleep to induce the lowering of body temperature in sleeping.

Then, the room temperature is kept constant, and when the preset wake-up time approaches, the room temperature is gradually raised to induce the raising of body temperature before waking.

- V-shape pattern temperature control system
  - The air conditioner controls the room temperature showing V-shape pattern.

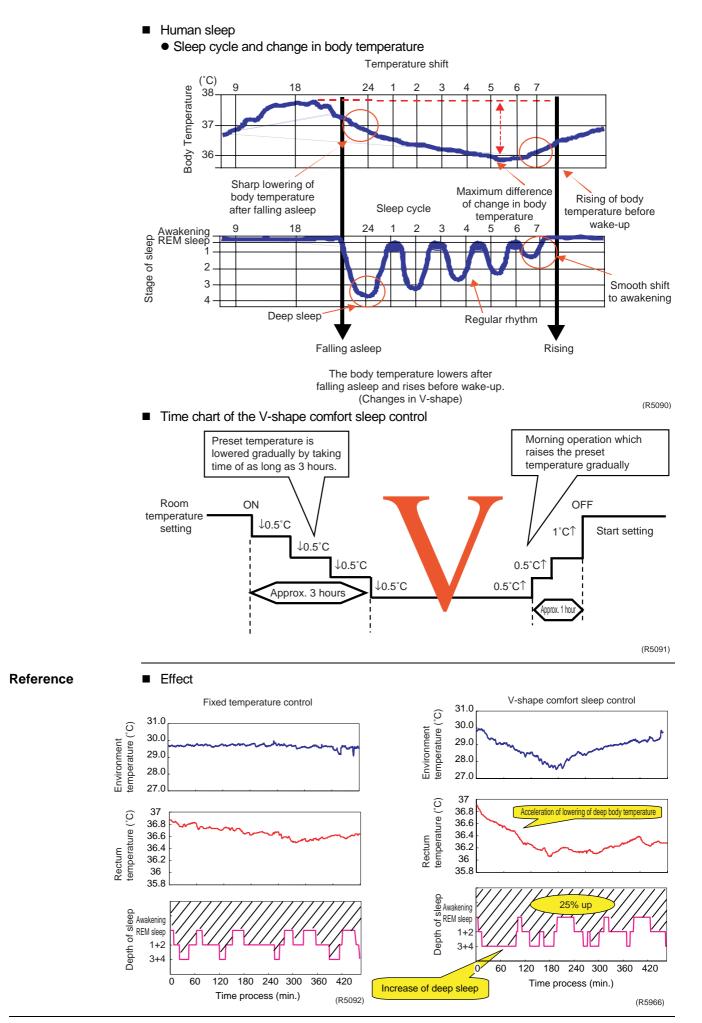


<V shape temperature control>

(R5089)

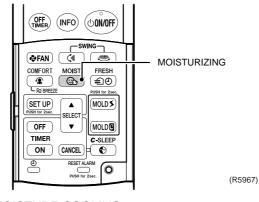
Change in body temperature in human sleep is controlled in ideal V-shape pattern by airconditioner's temperature control.

(Reference: Control system adopted for JAL First Class flight)



## 2.4 MOISTURIZING Operation

### Operation

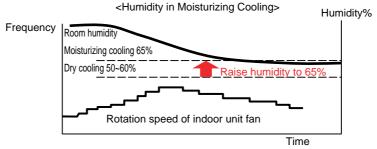


- Effective mode for MOISTURE COOLING
  - Cooling
  - Dry cooling
- Effective mode for MOISTURE HEATING
  - Heating
  - Humid heating

\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

#### Features

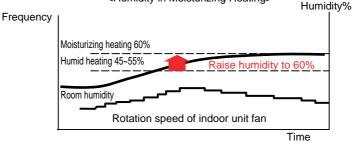
- "Relatively high humidity" setting, "Comfort Airflow Mode" giving no airflow to the body, and "emission of vitamins and hyaluronic acid" --- These 3 types of operations are performed simultaneously to create skin-friendly environment.
- MOISTURIZING operation is to make the room condition friendly to your skin. It is not for beauty and beautiful skin treatment, and prevention of skin roughness.
- Details of operation



- Operation to keep the humidity 65%
- Being unlike ordinary dry cooling, it prevents the room from drying.

(R5093)



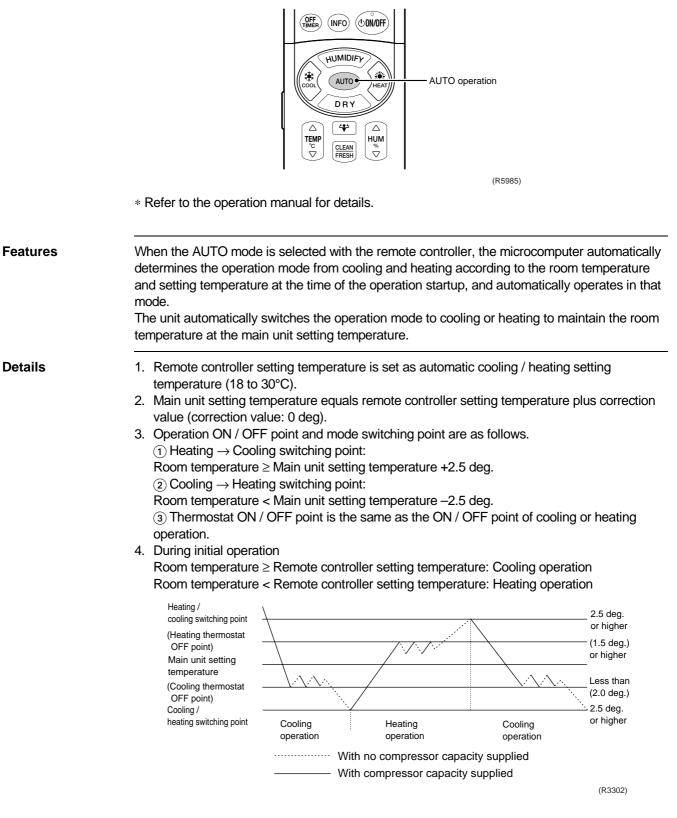


• Operation to keep the humidity 60%

• It creates a space more moisturized than by ordinary humid heating.

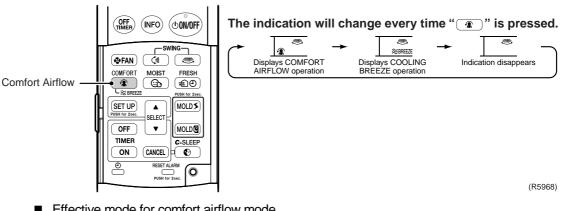
## 2.5 Automatic Operation

### Operation



#### **Comfort Airflow Mode** 2.6

### Operation



- Effective mode for comfort airflow mode
  - Heating
  - Humid heating
  - Cooling
  - "SARARA" drying
  - Dry cooling
  - Moisturizing
- Flap motion
  - Upper and lower flaps halt at the fixed position of the upper side or lower side of the swing.
  - · Left and right flaps move according to the settings of remote controller.
- Airflow rate
  - Airflow rate is at "automatic".

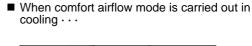
\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

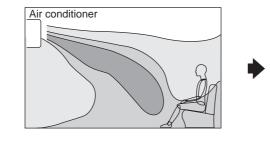
#### **Features**

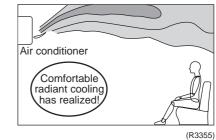
### Draftless operation prevents direct blow to human

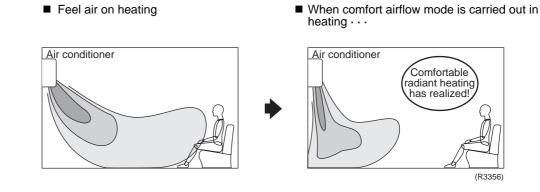
Draftless operation sustains direct blow to skins. Cool air is blown up in the room and changed into slow downward flow, circulating into entire room. Meanwhile the warm air is blown down vertically to our foot, warming the room from the floor.

Feel cold on cooling operation







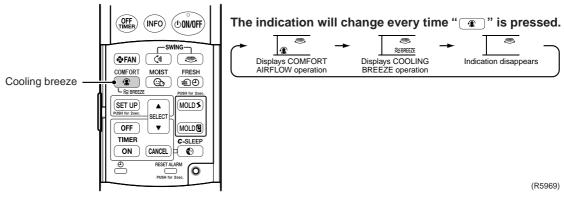




In heating operation, it takes time to transmit heat to a distant place because the airflow direction is controlled not to blow direct on human. It is recommended that this operation mode is used after the room has been warmed up.

## 2.7 Cooling Breeze Operation

### Operation



- Effective mode for cooling breeze airflow
  - · Cooling
  - "SARARA" drying
  - Dry cooling
  - Flash streamer air purifying



On automatic mode, when actual operation mode is heating, this cool air fluctuation operation does not work. (Indication on remote controller is shown.)

Flap operation

As shown in the graph above, the standard point is the upper limit of the swing so that the air do not touch directly.

Depending on the room temperature or the thermostat on/off state, swing interval is changed.

(The lower the temperature, the longer the swing interval, thereby comfort is maintained.) Left and right flaps move as set at the settings of remote control.

### Airflow rate

Airflow rate is controlled automatically.

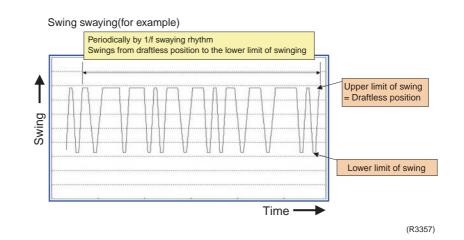
\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

### 1/f fluctuation rhythms switches air flow direction

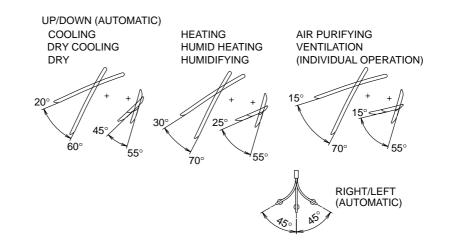
By fluctuating air flow direction you can feel cool even the room temperature is set rather high.

By1/f fluctuation rhythm, upper and lower flaps move up and down unlike the conventional up and down swing, and this movement brings you a comfortable air like a breeze in nature.



## 2.8 Power-airflow Dual Flaps

Triple air flow by the combination with wide-angle louvers



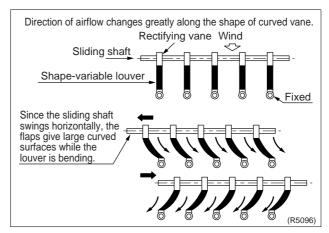
(R5970)

## 2.9 Wide-angle Louvers

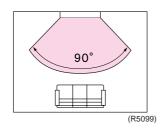
Wider airflow eliminates disagreeable irregular temperature distribution. For the right and left flaps, the wide-angle louver which produces wider airflow is adopted. Since it veers flexibly and swings horizontally at a wide angle, comfortable airflow spreads to every corner of the room.

### ■ Wide-angle Louvers

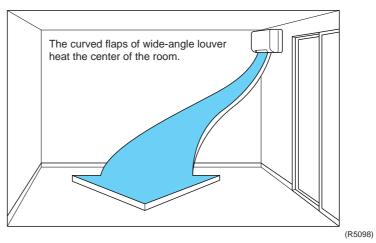
Direction of airflow changes greatly along the shape of curved vane.



Flap angle



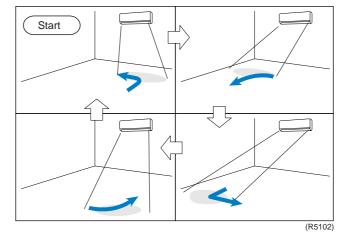
It can send the airflow to the center of the room even when the air-conditioner is installed at a corner of the room.



## 2.10 3-D Airflow

Alternative swing of flaps in vertical and horizontal directions circulates the airflow to every corner of the room and prevents uneven temperature distribution.

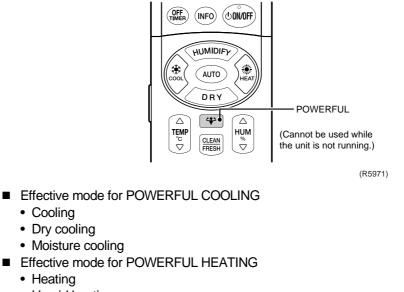
Use of the 3-D airflow control prevents uneven temperature distribution in the whole room. Particularly, the comfortable zone 10 cm above the floor is widened 1.5 times of the conventional zone.



- If it is used at the start of operation, a flow of draft may feel you chilly.
- It is recommended to use it after the room temperature is stabilized.

# 2.11 POWERFUL Operation

### Operation



• It is impossible to change the airflow rate, temperature, and humidity.

- Humid heating
- Moisture heating

\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Operating sound becomes slightly loud.

Note

Features

The airflow rate and the compressor rotating speed are increased from the normal operation for 20 min. This operation is convenient when you just come back home. (Normal operation will be resumed automatically in 20 min.)

## 2.12 Indoor Unit Quiet Operation

Features

Note

Forced dropping of the fan tap decreases the airflow rate and reduces airflow noise. (Noise is reduced by about 3 dB as compared to that in L tap.)

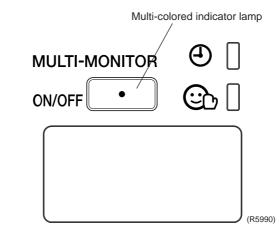
- Airflow rate can not be set.
  - Since the performance is somewhat lowered as compared to that in normal operation (70% under rated conditions), the room may not be cooled (or heated) when this operation is used for a long time.
  - The indoor unit quiet operation is kept in memory even when the power supply is turned OFF.

The indication remains on the display of the wireless remote controller and the indoor unit quiet operation works when the power is turned ON again.

## 2.13 Multi-colored Indicator Lamp

Features

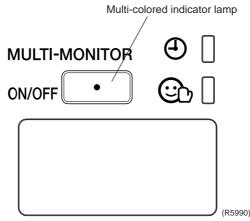
Current operation mode is displayed in color of the lamp of the indoor unit which changes in 8 colors. Operating status can be monitored even in automatic operation in accordance with the content of actual operation.



- The lamp color changes according to the operation.
  - HEATING .....Red
     "URURU" HUMIDIFYING /
     HUMID HEATING .....Orange
  - COOLING ......Green
     "SARARA" DRYING /
- DRY COOLING......Yellow
- The lamp color also changes according to the optional function.
  - FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING/ FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION .......White (Only for the first 2 seconds during operation of the air conditioner.)
  - $\bullet$  MOLD PROOF ...... Purple & blue  $\rightarrow$  Blue & light blue  $\rightarrow$  Light blue & white  $\rightarrow$  White
  - MOLD SHOCK......Blue & light blue & white

## 2.14 Monitor Brightness Setting

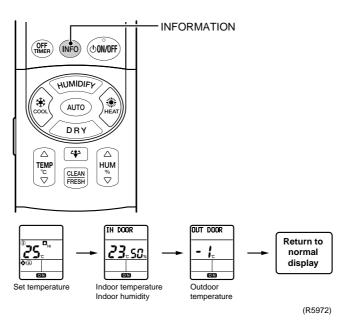
The brightness of the multi-colored indicator lamp can be adjusted HIGH, LOW, or OFF. It is convenient when it is excessively bright while asleep.



\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

## 2.15 Information Display

Operation



\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

### Features

Note

Point the remote controller at the indoor unit for 2 seconds.

• Outdoor temperature during operation may be displayed relatively high in cooling or "SARARA" drying, and relatively low in heating (particularly when the outdoor unit is frosted) by influence of air blown out from the outdoor unit and temperature of the heat exchanger.

Room temperature, indoor humidity, and outdoor temperature are displayed.

- Lowest displayable outdoor temperature is -9°C. Even if the outdoor temperature is lower than this, "-9" is displayed. Highest displayable outdoor temperature is 39°C. Even if the outdoor temperature is higher than this, "39" is displayed.
- Displayed temperature and humidify are those near the sensor.
- Displayed temperature or humidity may be different from the actual temperature or humidity depending on the conditions of indoor unit and outdoor unit installation (due to obstacle near the sensor or influence of direct sunlight).
   Take it as a rough standard.

### 2.16 MOLD PROOF Operation

This is an integrated naming of functions such as inside drying, moist air exhaustion, moldprevention stick. Drying inside the air conditioner prevents mold or odors to be generated.

Operation

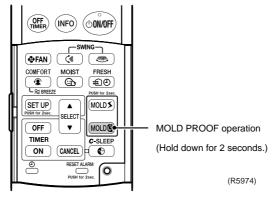
Operation can be selected from automatic / manual.

Auto operation

(approximately once every 2 weeks)

If the unit is set to "MOLD PROOF ON", the MOLD PROOF operation will start automatically after the unit has been run is "SARARA" DRYING or COOLING mode, depending on the amount of time the unit has been run (approximately once every 2 weeks.) The default is set to "MOLD PROOF OFF".

Manual operation

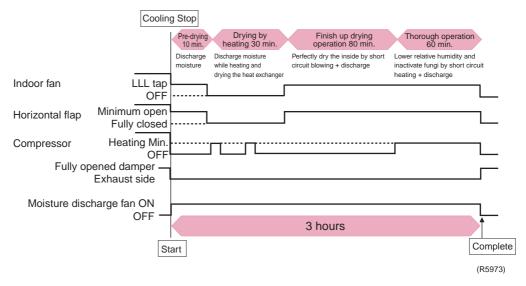


\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

Time chart

Operation runs about for 3 hours while changing colors of the multi-colored indicator lamp.

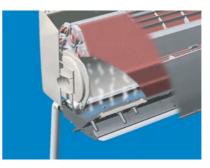


### **Inside Drying**



1. Drained water discharge Drained water in drain pan is discharged.

### **Exhausting Moisture**



**2. Inside drying operation** After the drained water discharged, the moisture etc. which are left on drain pan or heat exchanger are dried by evaporation.

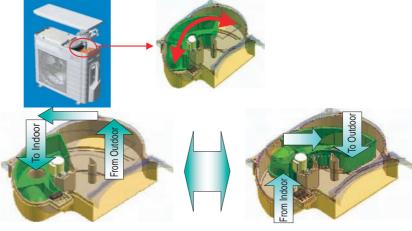


3. Moisture exhaustion

Exhaust moisture to outdoors using the humidification hose.

### Switching air supply / exhausting

We have developed this function on a damper inside the humidification unit, by leaving conventional air intake fan in place that supplies air from outdoor to indoor as it is.



Air supply position

Exhaust position (R3374)

### Condition for operation

1. Accumulated operation time: 21,600 min. (approx.15 days)

2. Accumulated cooling/dehumidifying operation time: 5,400 min. (approx.15 days x 6 hours) This function starts when both conditions are met.



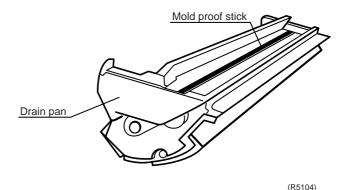
- This is not the function for eliminating dust or mold attached inside the air conditioner.
- During operation, smells may occur.
- This function sometimes does not begin when outdoor temperature or indoor humidity is extremely high.
- Depending on the temperature conditions, moisture exhaustion function is not carried out.

### 2.17 Mold Proof Stick

Features

Drain pan which prevents mold proliferation

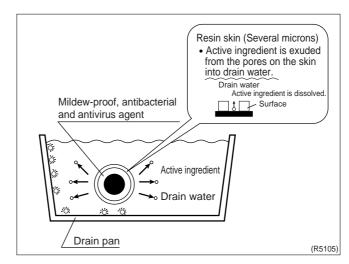
The drain pan of the main unit which easily goes moldy is equipped with a "Stick" having mildew-proof, antibacterial and antivirus effect.



Since mildew-proof, antibacterial and antivirus agent of silver group which is the compound of highly safe titanium oxide and silver is used as a single agent, drain water is not affected by this agent.

The mildew-proof, antibacterial and antivirus agent is applied to a stick which is covered further with extremely thin resin skin of several microns (resin section without mildew-proof agent on the surface of the resin). The active ingredient is dissolved gradually for about 10 years by immersion and penetration of stick and drain water. Thus, the stick continues working.

Image



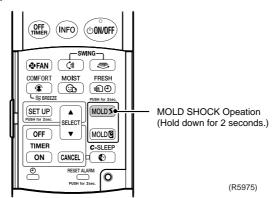
\* The efficacy of the stick has been proved by Hallo's Method test conducted at Kyoto Microbiological Research Center.

### 2.18 MOLD SHOCK Operation

The room is kept clean by removing excessive moisture by rapidly lowering the humidity in the room for 1 hour, and keeping operation for 2 hours (total 3 hours).

Operation

It is not self-starting operation.



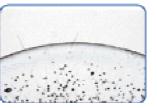
\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

#### Dry shock method (Mold Shock Operation)

Method to prevent the generation of mold by suddenly drying the humid environment. It is generally said that the growth of mold can be prevented by lowering the humidity to half and continuing the operation for 3 hours.

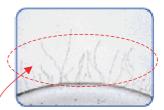
Mold before mold shock operation





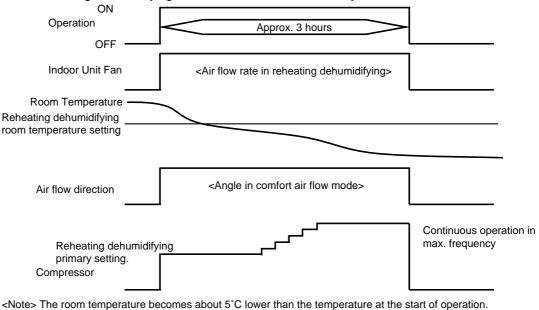
The test was conducted at DAIKIN's lab with use of the mold sensor of Environmental Biological Research Institute.

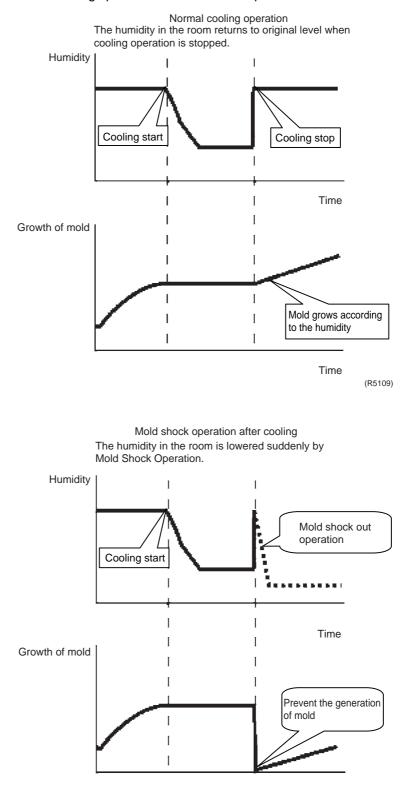
With mold shock operation



Fewer molds grow as compared with in the case without Mold Shock Operation. (R5107)

- Time chart
  - Operation runs about for 3 hours in rotal while charging colors of the multi-colored indicator lamp.
  - Reheating dehumidifying which dehumidifies continuously.



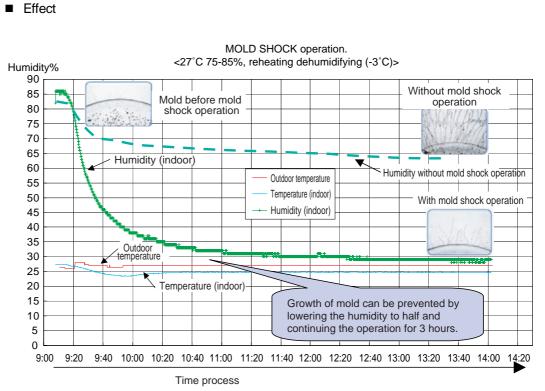


Comparison with cooling operation and mold shock operation

Time

(R5110)

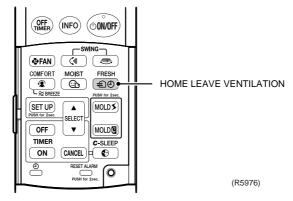
#### Reference



(R5112)

# 2.19 HOME LEAVE Ventilation

### Operation



\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

### Ventilate your room while you are out

This function refreshes your room by ventilating while you are out.

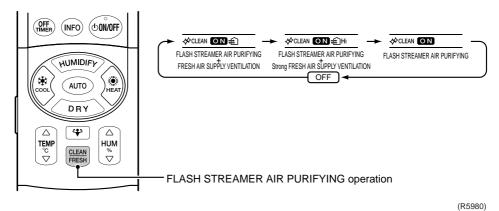
- Operation
  - •To take a fresh air from outdoors via outdoor unit, air is heated with a heater on humidification unit contained in the outdoor unit to decompose exhaust gas components (NOx) and the like, and passed through air intake filter to eliminate pollens and mold.
  - •OFF timer allows to set operation time ranging from 1 to 9 hours (Factory set: 4 hours).



- 1. Outdoor sound may be heard or air may have a smell, as the air is taken from outdoors. Compared with the other operations, operating sound is rather high.
- 2. According to the outdoor temperature/humidity operating sound sometimes changes.

# 2.20 FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING Operation

### Operation

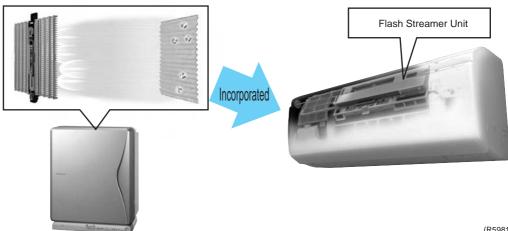


\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

### Flash Streamer Air-Purifying

The technology for the real air purifier is adopted for the air conditioner. Our original technology "Flash Streamer" system used for our Daikin's air purifiers is incorporated. This technology realizes the air purifying exceeding far from the air purifying performance of the normal air conditioner.

Powerfully analyses and removes the diesel dust, NOx, mold, virus, etc.



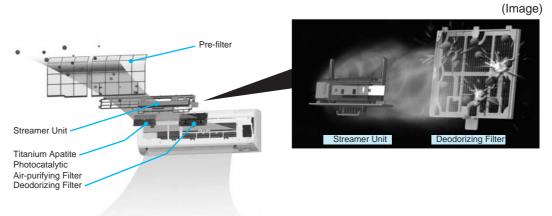
(R5981)

#### Mechanism of Flash Streamer Air-Purifying

The streamer discharging high energy electron analyzes and removes powerfully odor, unwanted bacteria and hazardous chemical materials at the oxidative distraction speed of 1000 times higher than the generally used glow discharge.

Air purification flow

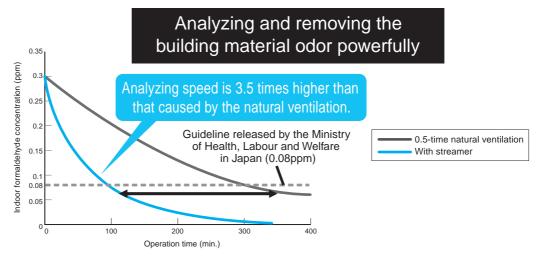
New air purification system incorporating the streamer



Powerfully decompose and remove molecules of allergens or odors by collision with highspeed electrons discharged from streamer unit.

(R5982)

#### Removing Formaldehyde

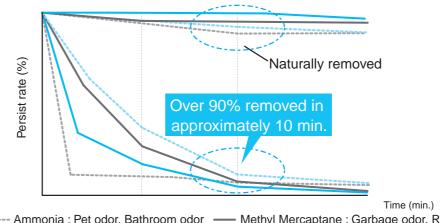


The formaldehyde concentration in the laboratory (10 m<sup>2</sup>) at 0.5-time ventilation and the initial concentration setting of 0.3 ppm (Observed by Daikin using the FTXR28E) (Nozaki laboratory, Graduate Course of Health and Society System, Tohoku Bunka Gakuen University)

(R5983)

Deodorizing Performance of Flash Streamer and Titanium Apatite Photocatalyst Unpleasant odor daily generating in the room such as pet odor or garbage odor is powerfully removed. Speedy deodorization: 90% or more odor has been removed in 10 minutes. Cigarette odor of 80% or more has been removed.

Daily odor removal performance by streamer air purifying (%)



----- Ammonia : Pet odor, Bathroom odor ----- Methyl Mercaptane : Garbage odor, Rot odor ----- Trimethylamine : Fish odor ----- Hydrogen Sulfide : Egg odor

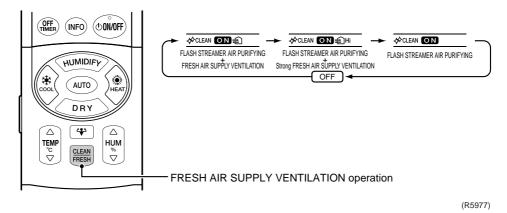
Persist rate of odor ingredients in a box of 1m<sup>3</sup>, operating FTXR42E(Daikin result)

(R5984)

|         | Ammonia | Acetaldehyde | Acetic Acid | Cigarette Odor |  |
|---------|---------|--------------|-------------|----------------|--|
| Removal | 90.6%   | 76.5%        | 87.2%       | 82.7%          |  |

## 2.21 Fresh Air Supply Ventilation

### Operation



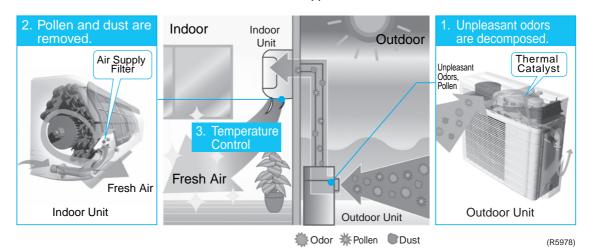
\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

#### Features

#### Air Supply Ventilation

The air supply ventilation system using only fresh air.

Any contaminated outdoor air is purified in two stages of indoor unit and outdoor unit. Fresh air from which bacteria were removed is supplied into the room.



### 1. Purifying air in the outdoor unit

Thermal catalyst containing in the humidifying rotor analyzes unpleasant odor and also removes exhaust gases (NOx, SOx).

Manganese catalyst used to treat the automotive exhaust gas is adopted for the thermal catalyst.

### 2. Purifying air in the indoor unit

The air supply filter is placed at the humidifying hose outlet of the indoor unit side. The air supply filter removes about 97% pollen and dust.

### 3. Controlling temperature

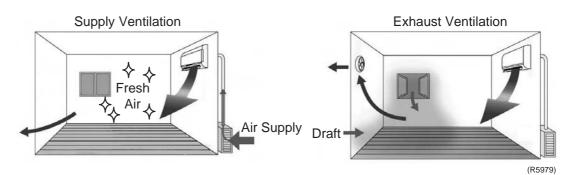
The fresh air passed through the air supply filter is cooled (or heated) in the indoor unit and supplied into the room.

You can keep comfortable temperature and also replace air because the ventilation is performed while temperature is controlled.

Pollen, exhaust gas and odor that could not be removed by the thermal catalyst and air supply filter will be analysed by the flash streamer and photocatalyst.

### Ventilation System

The ventilation type is mainly divided into two. The convenient system is supply ventilation.

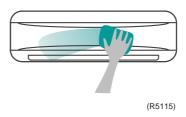


- Quiet because the ventilation fa is located in the outdoor unit
- Energy saving system due to low heat loss
- The room temperature changes little because no wind enters
- Operation noise is heard because the ventilation fan is located in the room.
- Electricity charges are high because heat loss is high.
- Draft enters easily to prevent comfortable temperature from being kept.

### 2.22 Wipe-clean Flat Panel

It wipes off dirt in an instant. The grill-less panel is easy to clean and can be dismounted easily for washing.

Dismount the panel in the procedure as mentioned below, wipe it lightly with soft cloth impregnated with lukewarm water or cold neutral detergent solution and dry it in the shade. Note: If it is washes with use of polishing powder or scrubber, or in the water hotter than 40°C, it may be scratched, discolored or deformed.



- Caution
  - When mounting or dismounting the front panel, use a robust and stable stand and watch out your step.
  - Proceed to work while supporting the front panel securely by hand.
  - Do not use the water hotter than 40°C, benzin, gasoline, thinner or other volatiles, polishing powder or scrubber.
  - Make sure that the front panel is mounted securely.

### 2.23 Filter Cleaning Indicator (Remote Controller)

When the unit is operated for about 2 weeks (about 340 hours), the filter cleaning indication appears to inform you that the time of maintenance comes.

If the filter is left dirty, the power consumption increases by about 10%. It is recommended to maintain it periodically for energy-saving operation.

How to reset the filter cleaning indicator

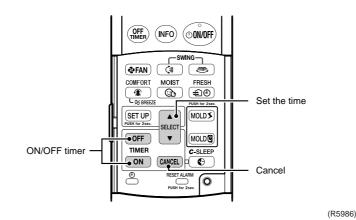


When the "FILTER LED RESET" button of the remote control is kept pressed for about 2 sec. toward the airconditioner main unit after maintenance of the filter, the filter cleaning indication disappears.

(R5118)

### 2.24 TIMER Operation 2.24.1 24-hour ON/OFF Timer

### Operation



\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

#### Features

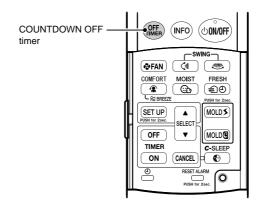
- Time can be set in the unit of 10 min.
- When the 24-hour ON/OFF is set, the indication of present time disappears.
- Time is kept in memory in the next operation unless it is cancelled.
- The clock error is ±30 sec. per month.

### **ON Timer**

The microcomputer monitors the indoor temperature and outdoor temperature before preset time and the operation is started automatically 1 hour before at maximum so that the room temperature becomes optimum at the preset time.

### 2.24.2 COUNTDOWN OFF Timer

### Operation



(R5987)

\* Refer to the operation manual for details.

Features

The COUNTDOWN OFF timer sets the time by simple button pressing. The operation is stopped when the set time comes. The time can be set in the unit of 0.5 hour for maximum 9.5 hours. It can be used in combination with the ON timer.

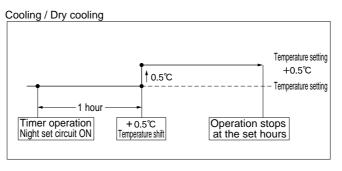
### 2.24.3 Combination of ON Timer and OFF Timer

 ON timer and OFF timer, or ON timer and COUNTDOWN OFF timer can be used in combination.

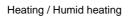
Refer to the operation manual for details.

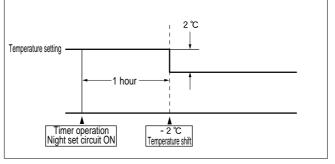
### 2.25 Night Set Mode

When you set the COUNTDOWN OFF TIMER or OFF TIMER, the unit is operated automatically in night set mode.



(R5123)

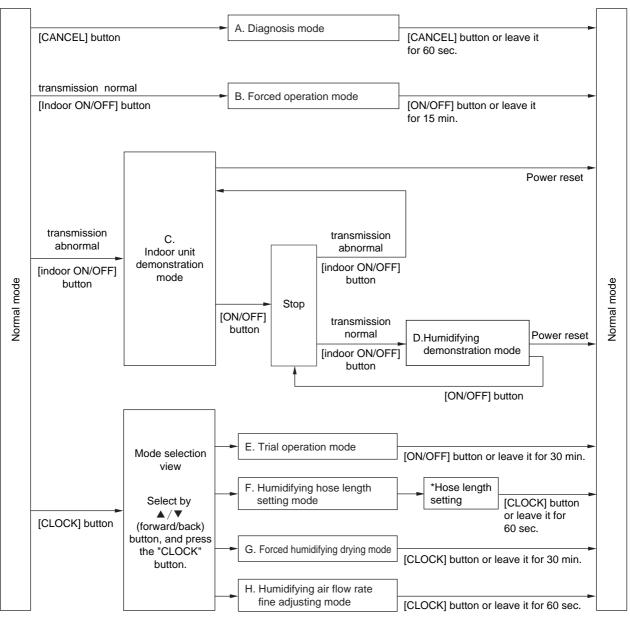




(R5124)

### 2.26 Table for Special Modes

Operation of indoor unit ON/OFF button and buttons of remote controller To enter a specific mode, press one of the buttons below for more than 5 sec.



(R6029)

- A. Diagnosis mode is improved to enable one-touch indication by applying two-way communication.
- B. Forced operation mode is the same as the conventional one. (But buzzer beeps, timer and multi-monitor illuminate)
- C. In indoor unit demonstration mode, the color of multi monitor changes regularly and the sequence of events (front panel open → flaps swing → front panel close) repeats. It takes about 10 minutes for 1 period.
- D. In humidifying demonstration mode, the color of the multi-colored indicator changes regularly.

Select "URURU" HUMIDIFYING or HUMID HEATING for demonstration. (This mode can be used for demonstration of humidification operation at shops.)

E. Trial operation mode is improved in such a way that the conventional 3 buttons to be pressed simultaneously are integrated into one button.
 The time to start compressor can be set by "▲ (forward)" button by 0 min., 1 min. or 3 min. later.

Select the desired operation mode to start operation.

- F. For humidifying hose length setting(\*), refer to page 93.
- G. In forced humidifying drying mode, drying operation continues for approx. 30 min. for service.
- Start this operation after removing all moisture inside the hose.
- During forced drying operation, cooling, heating or dehumidifying operation is unavailable.
- H. Humidifying air flow rate fine adjusting mode allows to fine-tune the speed of the humidification fan around ±10 % relative to AUTO. If you want to increase the air flow rate, set to [H], and to decrease the air flow rate, set to [L].

## 2.27 Thermostat Control

Outline

When COOLING or HEATING mode is selected with the remote controller, the micro computer prevents the unit from turning OFF until the requested room temperature could be obtained.

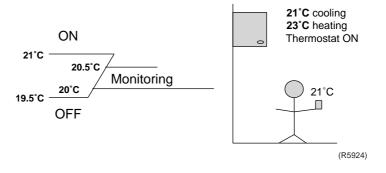
Detail

In the table below you can find the thermostat ON and OFF conditions for a set point of 21°C.

|         |   | OFF    | ON   | Monitoring |       |
|---------|---|--------|------|------------|-------|
| Cooling | Set point temperature 21°C> shift 0.5°C | 19.5°C | 21°C | 20~20.5°C  | 10min |
| Heating | Set point temperature 21°C> shift 2.0°C | 24.5°C | 23°C | 23.5~24°C  | 10sec |

### **Cooling operation:**

The unit will turn OFF by thermostat when the room temperature reaches  $19.5^{\circ}$ C. When the room temperature rises above  $21^{\circ}$ C, the thermostat turns back ON and the unit resumes its operation. When the room temperature is between  $20 \ll 20.5^{\circ}$ C, it is in the monitoring zone. If for cooling, the room temperature stays in the monitoring zone for more then 10 min, the thermostat will also turn back ON and the unit will resumes its operation.



Between the indoor unit and the position of the end user, there is taken into calculation a temperature shift of 0.5°C. This means that at thermostat OFF, the temperature at the end user is e.g. 20°C.

### Heating operation:

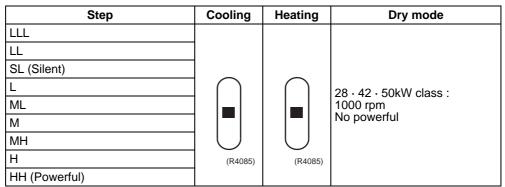
The unit will turn ON by thermostat when the room temperature reaches its set value + a shift of 2.0°C (e.g. room temperature =  $21^{\circ}$ C => thermostat ON temperature =  $23^{\circ}$ C). When the room temperature rises above 24.5°C, the thermostat turns back OFF. When the room temperature is between 24 <=>  $23.5^{\circ}$ C, it is in the monitoring zone. If for heating, the room temperature stays in the monitoring zone for more then 10 sec, the thermostat will also turn back ON and the unit will resumes its operation.

### 2.28 Fan Speed Control for Indoor Units

**Control mode** The airflow can be automatically controlled depending on the difference between the set temperature and the room temperature. This is done through speed control and Hall IC control.

Phase steps

Speed control and fan speed control contains different steps:



Within this range the airflow rate is automatically controlled when the FAN setting button is set to automatic.

- 1. During powerful operation, fan rotates at H tap + 80 rpm.
- 2. Fan stops during defrost operation.
- In time of thermostat OFF, the fan rotates at the following speed. Cooling: The fan keeps rotating at the set tap. Heating: The fan stops.

| 28 class   | LLL | LL  | SL  | L   | ML   | М    | HM   | Н    | HH   |
|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|------|------|
| Cooling    |     | 590 | 720 | 790 | 890  | 990  | 1090 | 1190 | 1270 |
| Heating    | 350 | 590 | 790 | 860 | 970  | 1080 | 1190 | 1300 | 1380 |
|            |     |     |     |     |      |      |      |      |      |
| 42 class   | LLL | LL  | SL  | L   | ML   | М    | HM   | Н    | HH   |
| Cooling    |     | 590 | 750 | 820 | 940  | 1060 | 1180 | 1300 | 1380 |
| Heating    | 350 | 590 | 820 | 890 | 1000 | 1110 | 1220 | 1340 | 1420 |
| . <u> </u> |     |     |     |     |      |      |      |      |      |
| 50 class   | LLL | LL  | SL  | L   | ML   | М    | HM   | Н    | HH   |
| Cooling    |     | 590 | 790 | 860 | 990  | 1120 | 1250 | 1380 | 1460 |

In the above table you can see all the different fan speeds of the indoor units fan motor.

950

When selecting AUTOMATIC air flow control on the remote controller, the indoor fan speed will be regulated according to the difference between the room temperature and the required set point on cooling mode. On heating mode, the indoor fan speed will be regulated according to the indoor heat exchanger temperature and the difference between the room temperature and the required set point.

1070

1190

1310

1440

1520

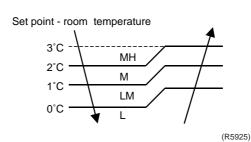
### Cooling

Heating

350

590

860

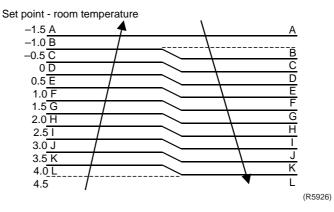


Function and Control

### Heating

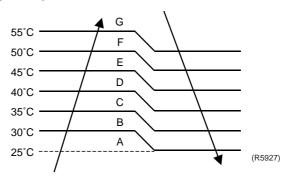
| Room      | Indoor heat exchanger temperature area |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|-----------|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|
| temp.area | G                                      | F   | E   | D   | С   | В   | А   |  |  |  |
| Α         | OFF                                    | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |  |  |  |
| В         | MH                                     | LM  | LM  | L   | L   | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| С         | MH                                     | LM  | LM  | L   | L   | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| D         | MH                                     | М   | LM  | LM  | L   | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| E         | MH                                     | М   | М   | LM  | LM  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| F         | MH                                     | MH  | М   | М   | LM  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| G         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | М   | LM  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| Н         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | MH  | М   | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| I         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | MH  | М   | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| J         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | MH  | MH  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| K         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | MH  | MH  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |
| L         | MH                                     | MH  | MH  | MH  | MH  | L   | 2L  |  |  |  |

### Room temperature area



The value will increases when the operation starts.

### Indoor heat exchanger temperature area



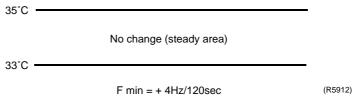
## 2.29 Draft Prevention (HOT Start)

 Outline
 Draft prevention control is done to prevent a cold draft feeling when the unit is started up in heating operation. This will happen if the indoor coil temperature drops.

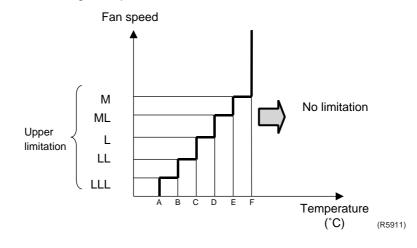
 Detail
 The outdoor unit will prevent a cold draft by monitoring the indoor heat-exchanger thermistor. It will increase the minimum compressor frequency if the indoor heat exchanger drops below 33°C. If the coil is not hot enough, the indoor fan will not be started at the set speed.

 F min = - 2Hz/120sec

 35°C



The fan speed will be released step by step. The limitation of the fan speed will be lifted when the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises above F°C.



|          | А  | В  | С  | D  | E  | F  |  |
|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| 28 class | 10 | 25 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 |  |
| 42 class | 10 | 25 | 35 | 37 | 38 | 39 |  |
| 50 class | 10 | 25 | 35 | 37 | 38 | 39 |  |

# 3. Control Specification

# 3.1 Frequency Control

| Outline                      | Once the timers of the compressor start-up have elapsed, the unit will determine its compress frequency out of the following parameters;   |              |                           |                 | pressor                   |              |                           |              |
|------------------------------|--|--------------|---------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|--------------|
|                              | 1. ∆D: The differ<br>2. Td : The discl   |              |                           | n temper        | ature and the se          | et-point.    |                           |              |
| Indoor frequency<br>command  | The indoor command frequency is determined by the difference between the room temperature<br>and the temperature set by the remote controller. Out of this difference a $\Delta D$ value (D from<br>difference) is calculated which is then send to the outdoor unit.<br>Underneath you'll find a table, which relates the different $\Delta D$ values to the temperature<br>differences.  |              |                           |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
|                              | Temperature<br>difference  | ∆D<br>signal | Temperature<br>difference | ∆D<br>signal    | Temperature<br>difference | ∆D<br>signal | Temperature<br>difference | ∆D<br>signal |
|                              | 0  | *Th<br>OFF   | 2.0                       | 4               | 4.0                       | 8            | 6.0                       | C            |
|                              | 0.5  | 1            | 2.5                       | 5               | 4.5                       | 9            | 6.5                       | D            |
|                              | 1.0  | 2            | 3.0                       | 6               | 5.0                       | Α            | 7.0                       | E            |
|                              | 1.5  | 3            | 3.5                       | 7               | 5.5                       | В            | 7.5                       | F            |
|                              | *Th OFF = Ther   |              | -                         |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
|                              | Table: $\Delta D$ value  | summa        | ry table                  |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
|                              |  |              |                           |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
| Initial frequency<br>setting | When starting the compressor, the frequency must be (re-) initialized in accordance to the $\Delta D$ value. Out of this parameters, the micro-controller will determine the initial compressor frequency.<br>The frequency changes because of the decreasing $\Delta D$ values of the indoor units. The frequency will also be changed through limiting functions, which are protecting the unit. Some of these directly control the operating frequency.<br>Other functions will change the upper or lower frequency limit, preventing the unit from going into a certain operation frequency that will damage it. |              |                           | equency<br>hese |                           |              |                           |              |
| PI Control                   | The PI control will ensure a fast and efficient way of determining the compressor frequency build up.  |              |                           |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
| Detail                       | <b>I control</b><br>This regulator w<br>point (ΔD).  | ill look a   | t the temperatu           | re differe      | nce between th            | e room t     | emperature and            | I the set    |
|                              | <ul> <li>ΔD &gt; 4 then the compressor frequency will rise with ΔD Hz per 120 sec.</li> <li>ΔD = 4 then there is no change.</li> <li>ΔD &lt; 4 then the compressor frequency will drop with 4 Hz per 120 sec.</li> </ul>   |              |                           |                 |                           |              |                           |              |
|                              | P controlThis regulator will look at the differences between the room temperatures and the set points<br>$(\Delta D)$ in time.Compare the current $\Delta D$ and the last $\Delta D$ (20 seconds before). If any change is observed,<br>correct the value calculated by the following formula.   |              |                           |                 | oints                     |              |                           |              |
|                              |  |              |                           |                 | d,                        |              |                           |              |

• ( $\Delta D$  currently -  $\Delta D$  last measurement ) x 4

# 3.2 **Preheating Operation (Quick Warming Function)**

Outline

Operate the inverter in the open phase operation with the conditions including the preheating command from the discharge pipe temperature.

Detail

Note

#### On condition

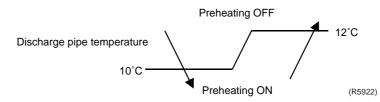
The preheating operation starts when the discharge pipe temperature drops below 10°C. At that time, the inverter in open phase operation starts. This means that a small current is send through one of the compressor windings in order to heat up the inside of the compressor. This is done in order to prevent liquid compression at start up of the compressor when the outdoor temperature is low.

## **OFF** condition

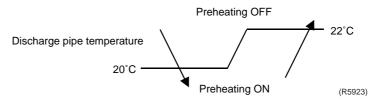
When the discharge temperature is higher than 12°C, the inverter in open phase operation stops.

This function is applicable for cooling only as for heat pump units. The inverter in open phase control consumes approximately 25~40W.

When the preheating operation is active, there is the possibility that a frequency noise can be noticed at the outdoor unit site due to the open phase control. **outdoor temperature**  $\geq$  7°C



#### outdoor temperature < 7°C



# 3.3 Four-way Valve Operation

| Outline | Because the four-way valve only operates properly when there is an adequate pressure difference, the four-way valve compensation function has been implemented to insure this minimal pressure difference.                       |  |  |  |
|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Detail  | The four-way valve compensation function insures a good four-way valve operation by demanding a certain minimal operation frequency for a certain time. By doing this, the unit is ensuring the switching of the four-way valve. |  |  |  |
|         | When this function is enabled, the unit will not look at the other safeties (with the exception of input current control).   |  |  |  |
|         | <ul> <li>The four-way valve function compensation is engaged in four cases</li> <li>When starting the compressor for heating.</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |

- When the operation mode is changed.
- When starting the compressor for defrosting.
- When starting the compressor after a power failure (auto-restart).

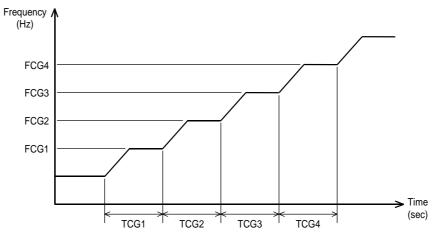
No power to the valve --> cooling. Power to the valve --> heating.

|         |  | Frequency [Hz]                   | Time [sec] |
|---------|--|----------------------------------|------------|
| Cooling |  | 52                               |            |
| Heating | outdoor temperature < 16°C             | 52                               | 60         |
| Heating | outdoor temperature $\geq 16^{\circ}C$ | - 0.9 x outdoor temperature + 68 |            |

# 3.4 Compressor Start up Protection

Detail

The gradual build-up of the upper operation frequency is illustrated in the graph below.



(R5908)

Fig. : Compressor protection function graph.

|      | RXR(2   | 28-50)  |
|------|---------|---------|
|      | Cooling | Heating |
| FCG1 | 52      | 48      |
| FCG2 | 54      | 58      |
| FCG3 | 78      | 80      |
| FCG4 | 98      | 98      |
| TCG1 | 220     | 220     |
| TCG2 | 140     | 140     |
| TCG3 | 60      | 60      |
| TCG4 | 60      | 60      |

Timers and frequencies for the compressor protection function

# 3.5 Fan Speed Control for Outdoor Unit

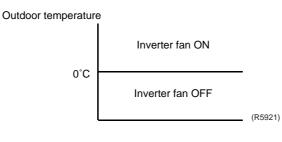
Outline

The fan speed control regulates the speed of the outdoor fan.

Detail

- Fan control is carried out according to the following conditions.
- 1. Fan ON control for electric component cooling fan
- 2. Fan control when defrosting
- 3. Fan OFF delay when stopped
- 4. ON/OFF control when cooling operation
- 5. Fan control during heating operation

### Cooling



| Class                   | Cooling |  |
|-------------------------|---------|--|
| 28                      | 800rpm  |  |
| 42                      | 850rpm  |  |
| 50                      | 850rpm  |  |
| The fan speed is fixed. |         |  |

## Heating

| Class                   | Heating |  |
|-------------------------|---------|--|
| 28                      | 750rpm  |  |
| 42                      | 760rpm  |  |
| 50                      | 810rpm  |  |
| The few exceed is fixed |         |  |

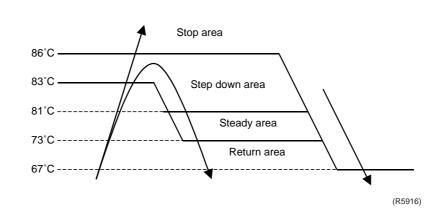
The fan speed is fixed.

# 3.6 Fin Thermistor Control

Outline

This function is only applicable for inverters. The temperature sensor is located on the top of the radiation fins connected to the power elements of the electronic inverter circuit (PAM & PWM).

Detail

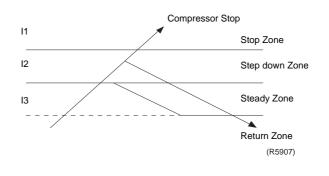


Step down area :

• The frequency decreases with 2 Hz every 15 seconds.

# 3.7 Input Current Control

## Detail



| Class  | Class |     |      | Heating |      |      |
|--------|-------|-----|------|---------|------|------|
| Class  | 28    | 42  | 50   | 28      | 42   | 50   |
| I1 (A) | 14    | 14  | 14   | 14      | 14   | 14   |
| l2 (A) | 5.5   | 7.5 | 10.0 | 10.5    | 10.5 | 10.5 |
| 13     | 4.5   | 6.5 | 9.0  | 9.5     | 9.5  | 9.5  |

## Stop zone

• After 5 seconds in this zone the compressor is stopped



\*I2 has the cooling and heating current, respectively. Ambient temperature

(R5917)

## Step down zone

- The maximum limit of the compressor frequency in this control is defined as operation frequency 2 Hz.
- After this, the output frequency is pulled down by 2 Hz every second until it reaches the steady zone.

## Steady zone

• Keeping the present maximum frequency.

# Return zone

• Limit of the frequency is cancelled.

# 3.8 Peak-cut Control

Outline

In heating operation, malfunctioning of the unit (for example dirty filters) can cause the discharge pressure to rise excessively and reach unacceptable levels. To avoid this, peak-cut control will monitor the condensing temperature and when necessary decrease the operating frequency in an attempt to lower the discharge pressure at an early stage.

Detail

In a similar way as with the freeze protection function, the peak-cut control function regulates the maximum operation frequency as indicated in the picture underneath.

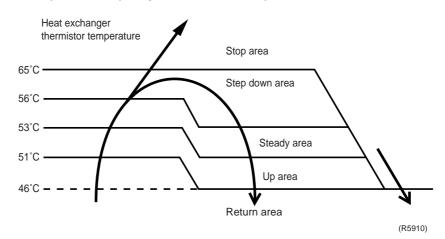


Fig. : Peak-cut control function graph

### When recovering from a total stop (return area) :

• Frequency settings remain unchanged.

#### Up-area:

• The maximum frequency increases with approximately 2Hz every 2 minute. **Steady area:** 

• The maximum frequency remains constant.

Step down area:

• The maximum frequency decreases with approximately 4Hz every 20sec.

## Stop area:

• The compressor, indoor fan and outdoor fan will stop.

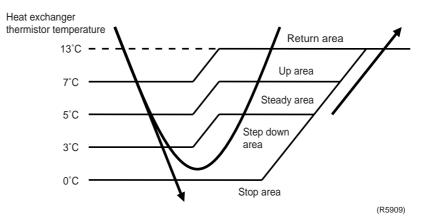
# 3.9 Indoor Coil Freeze-up Protection

Outline

During cooling or dry operation, a malfunction of the unit may cause the indoor heat exchanger's temperature to drop excessively. To prevent the indoor heat exchanger from freezing up, the freeze protection function will reduce the compressor's maximum operation frequency.

Detail

The freeze protection function regulates the maximum operation frequency as indicated in the picture underneath.



### When recovering from a total stop (return area) :

• Frequency settings remain unchanged.

Up-area:

• The maximum frequency increases with approximately 2Hz every 90 seconds. **Steady area:** 

• The maximum frequency remains constant.

## Step down area:

• The maximum frequency decreases with approximately 2Hz every minute.

#### Stop area:

 The compressor stops completely and the outdoor unit fan will stop. The indoor unit fan operates at 590 rpm. The system will stay OFF until the indoor heat exchanger temperature goes to the reset zone. (13°C)

# 3.10 Dew Prevention

Outline

Cooling the air around us means that the air is dehumidified (condensation of water on the coil). But because the air is cooled down, less water can be absorbed by the air and as a consequence the relative humidity of the air rises. When the relative humidity of the outlet air nears 100%, you will have water being blown in. To prevent this from happening, the unit will, under certain circumstances, change its target evaporating temperature and the frequency of the compressor. Normally speaking, even under these conditions (dew prevention safety active), the room should still be cooled down, only slower. Of course, if the indoor unit is rather on the small size in comparison to the heat load, this will not be the case and capacity shortage complaints will follow.

## Detail

- Conditions for initiating the dew prevention function.
   Operation mode is in cooling/dry.
   ©Compressor is running.
- When the temperature of indoor heat exchanger is lower than the target temperature of heat exchanger, the compressor frequency will be pulled down by 2 Hz in every minute.
- The target temperature of heat exchanger is calculated by the following formula with using the room temperature and indoor humidity.

Target temp. of heat exchanger = 0.94 x room temp. + 0.27 x indoor humidity - 32.5

### 2. Conditions for ending the dew prevention function

Operation mode is not in cooling/dry.Ocompressor is not running.

# 3.11 Liquid Compression Protection 2

Outline

The function will ensure a pressure differential between the high pressure and the low pressure. This is required when cooling with low outdoor ambient temperature because HP gets weak and you will have small capacity and a high power input.

The compressor stops according to the conditions of the outdoor ambient temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature.

### Details

## Outdoor ambient temperature and outdoor heat exchanger temperature

- Cooling or Dry mode
- Compressor on
- Outdoor ambient < 10°C</li>
- Outdoor heat exchanger < 17°C</li>

If all of these are fulfilled for 11 minutes, the compressor is stopped, the system is reset and restarted after 3 minutes.

### Outdoor ambient temperature only

- Cooling or Dry mode
- Not in forced cooling mode
- Outdoor ambient < 0°C

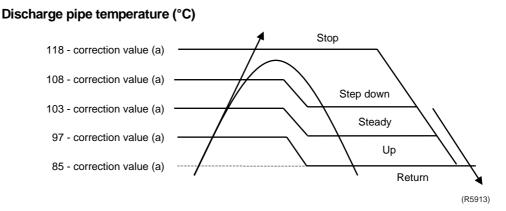
If all of these are fulfilled, the compressor is stopped, the system resumes operation when the outdoor ambient temperature rises above 0°C.

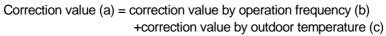
# 3.12 Discharge Pipe Temperature Control

Outline

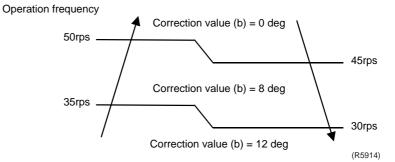
Overheating has a negative influence on the operating lifetime of a compressor. That's why this function will limit the maximum operating frequency of the compressor if deemed necessary.

Detail

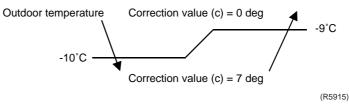




## Correction value by operation frequency (b)



## Correction value by outdoor temperature (c)



### When recovering from a total stop (return area) :

- Frequency settings remain unchanged.
- Up-area:
- The maximum frequency increases with 2Hz / 60 seconds Steady area:
- Present frequency is maximum frequency.
- Step down area:
- The maximum frequency decreases with 4Hz per 30 seconds.

### Stop area:

 The compressor stops and will only restart when the sensor senses a temperature below set point.

# 3.13 Automatic Defrosting

## **Defrost Control Start Condition**

| Heating mode         6 or more minutes passed since the compressor started its operation         The cumulative time of heating operation | <br>       | and |    |                          |
|---|------------|-----|----|--------------------------|
| The state that the outdoor heat exchanger temperature < $A^{\circ}C$ has continued for 1 minute or more                                   |            | -   | or | → Defrost control starts |
| Heating mode  | ,<br> <br> |     |    |                          |
| Compressor is in operation<br>The cumulative time of heating operation<br>reached 4 hours or more   |            | and |    |                          |
| Outdoor heat exchanger temperature < 0°C  | ,<br>      | -   |    |                          |

### $\ensuremath{\mathbb{A}}$ is calculated by the following formula:

 $\mathbb{A}=-17/256$  × compressor operation frequency + 43/64 × outside air temperature – 6 However, when the calculated value is less than the lower limit indicated in the table below, the lower limit is adopted as  $\mathbb{A}$ .

| Outside air temperature condition                  | Lower limit |
|--|-------------|
| $-4^{\circ}C \le outdoor air temp$                 | −15°C       |
| $-10^{\circ}C \le outdoor air temp. < -4^{\circ}C$ | –20°C       |
| outdoor air temp. < -10°C                          | -22°C       |

## **Operation during Defrosting and Termination Condition**

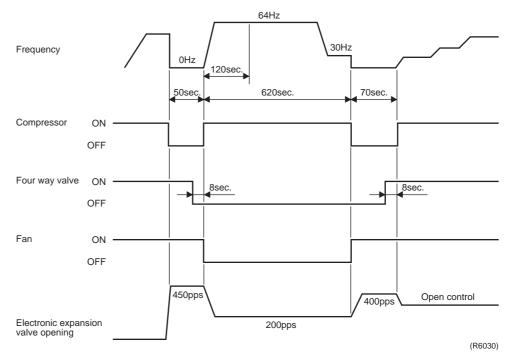
- Operation should be conducted at 64Hz during defrosting.
- Defrosting operation must be conducted for 2 minutes, and after that, defrosting operation is conducted until the outdoor heat exchanger temperature reaches the defrost cancellation temperature at B °C.
- After the temperature has reached the defrost cancellation temperature, the defrosting should be terminated.

#### $\square$ is calculated by the following formula:

 $\mathbb{B} = 18 - 22/64 \times \text{outside air temperature}$ 

However, when the calculated value is outside the range between 6°C and 22°C, if it is less than 6°C, 6 should be adopted and if it is more than 22°C, 22 is adopted, as the defrost cancellation temperature.

## **Defrosting Time Chart**



# 3.14 Electronic Expansion Valve Control

| Outli | ine |
|-------|-----|
|-------|-----|

The following items are included in the electronic expansion valve control.

### Electronic expansion valve is fully closed

- Electronic expansion valve is fully closed when turning on the power.
- Pressure equalizing control

### **Open Control**

- · Electronic expansion valve control when starting operation
- Control when frequency changed
- Control for defrosting (only for heat pump model)
- Control when a discharge pipe temperature is abnormally high
- Control when the discharge pipe thermistor is disconnected

### Feedback Control

- Discharge pipe temperature control
- Maximum electronic expansion valve opening : 470 pulses
- Minimum electronic expansion valve opening : 52 pulses

#### Detail

The gray squares indicate which secondary functions are active or can be activated.

| Operation pattern                | Main operation control            | Control when frequency is changed | Control for abnormally high discharge temperature |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Power ON                         | Power initialization control      | ×                                 | ×   |
| Cooling 1 room                   | Control when starting             | ×                                 | 0   |
| operation                        | Control of target discharge temp. | 0                                 | 0   |
| Stop                             | Pressure equalization control     | ×                                 | ×   |
| Heating 1 room                   | Control when starting             | ×                                 | 0   |
| operation                        | Control of target discharge temp. | 0                                 | 0   |
| Stop                             | Pressure equalization control     | ×                                 | ×   |
| Heating operation                | Control when starting             | ×                                 | 0   |
| discharge sensor<br>disconnected | Control of target discharge temp. | ×                                 | ×   |
| Stop                             | pressure equalization control     | ×                                 | ×   |

# **3.14.1 Power Initialization Control**

Outline When turning on the power to the unit, the expansion valve is initialized to a certain starting position.

Detail

At initialization the following steps are executed.

- The electronic expansion valve is closed by 700 pulses (to make sure it is closed shut).
- After closing the valve, it is opened again by 400 pulses.

# 3.14.2 Control when Starting

Outline

Obviously when the unit is switched on, some adjustments to the expansion valve opening have to be made in order to prevent excessive heating or moisture.

### Cooling

 $EV = K_{evopf} x \Delta F_{com+} K_{evopdce} x DA+ K_{evopdca} x DOA+ P_5$ 

### Heating

In 2 min. from the operation starts. EV = K<sub>evopf</sub> x  $\Delta$ F<sub>com</sub> + P<sub>5</sub>

After 2 min. from the operation starts.

| $D_{OA} \leq d_{oaopf}$  | $EV = K_{evopf} \ x \ \Delta F_{com} + P_{5}$                                       |
|--|---|
| $d_{\text{oaopf}} < D_{\text{OA}} \leq d_{\text{oaopf}} + dd_{\text{oaopf}}$ | $EV = K_{evopf} \times \Delta F_{com} + P_5 + K_{evopdoa} \times (DOA - d_{oaopf})$ |
| doaopf + ddoaopf < DOA   | $EV = K_{evopf} \times \Delta F_{com} + P_5 + K_{evopdoa} \times dd_{oaopf}$        |

### **Ending Condition**

After 6 minutes from the time compressor starts. or Discharge temperature  $\pm 6 >$  condensation temperature  $> 36^{\circ}C$ 

| Bisonarge temperature in |  |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          |  |
|                          |  |

| Kevopf          | : A constant depending on the outdoor unit type  |
|-----------------|--|
| P5              | : A constant depending on the outdoor unit type  |
| Kevopdce        | : A constant depending on the outdoor unit type. |
| Kevopdoa        | : A constant depending on the outdoor unit type. |
| doaopf          | : A constant                                     |
| <b>dd</b> oaopf | : A constant                                     |
| DA              | : The room temperature.                          |
| DOA             | : The outdoor temperature.                       |
| $\Delta F$ com  | : Compressor frequency change.                   |
|                 |  |

# 3.14.3 Control when Frequency is Changed

 Outline
 Because the operation frequency is one of the variables in the calculation of the original opening of the expansion valve, the opening will have to be recalculated when the operation frequency is changed. During this recalculation, the target discharge temperature control will be deactivated.

 Detail
 This control will engage when the operation frequency is changed during the target discharge temperature control. When this happens, a 10 seconds timer is set. Once this timer expires, the expansion valve opening is recalculated using the formulas below:

 PHNHZ = PHNHZZ + KEVOPF x (FMK - FMKZ)

 Where:

 PHNHZZ = expansion valve opening before change

 PHNHZ = expansion valve opening after change

 KEVOPF = constant value (cooling:2.7, heating:2.0)

 FMKZ = operation frequency after change

 FMKZ = operation frequency before change

The expansion valve opening is only changed when FMK - FMKZ > 4.

# 3.14.4 Target Discharge Pipe Temperature Control

### Outline

Detail

Superheat (SH) is required to insure that only gas and not liquid is sucked up by the compressor. Because of the direct link between the SH and the discharge temperature (see Fig. target discharge temperature), a control on the discharge temperature was made to be one of the main control systems of Daikin air-conditioners. The discharge temperature and SH are regulated by the expansion valve.

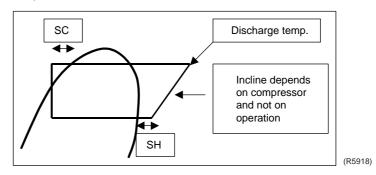


Fig.: Target discharge pipe temperature control graph

The adjustment to the expansion valve opening is determined by the difference between the actual discharge temperature and the target discharge temperature.

Starting conditions for this operation are:

- The starting control and the 'operation room change' control (only for multi system) are inactive.
- The frequency changing control, high discharge temperature control and disconnected discharge thermistor control are inactive
- The defrost operation is inactive
- The compressor is active

Target discharge temperature =  $\alpha$  cond. temp. -  $\beta$  evap. temp. +  $\gamma$ 

 $\alpha,\beta,\gamma$ ; predetermined constants related to different model types.

Discharge temp > target discharge temp, exp. valve will open. Discharge temp < target discharge temp, exp. valve will close.

The target superheat (SH) will be  $5^{\circ}$ C ~  $7^{\circ}$ C in cooling operation and  $0^{\circ}$ C in heating operation. The discharge superheat always have to be larger then  $10^{\circ}$ C. Otherwise the unit will have liquid compression. (depends on compressor type)

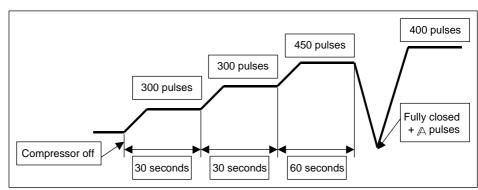
# 3.14.5 Pressure Equalization Control

## Outline

The pressure difference between the condenser and evaporator works as an extra load when restarting the compressor. To limit the load on the compressor when restarting it and consequently limit the starting current, a pressure-equalization is performed after deactivating the compressor. Pressure equalization is achieved by opening the expansion valve to a certain level and then closing it again.

Detail

As soon as the compressor is stopped due to an OFF command, the motorized valve is controlled as follows.



(R5919)

Fig.: Pressure equalization control graph in cooling mode

|   | A  |
|---|----|
| OFF command by remote controller, mode change | 24 |
| Thermostat OFF                                | 0  |

# 3.14.6 Control for Abnormally High Discharge Temperature

| Outline | An abnormally high discharge temperature is an indication for a too high suction temperature or super-heat. Making adjustments to the expansion valve opening can solve this problem.  |
|---------|--|
| Detail  | <ul> <li>Increasing the expansion valve opening will increase the refrigerant flow through the evaporator and decrease the superheat and the discharge temperature.</li> <li>The unit is operating in the 'dropping zone' when all the following conditions are met:</li> <li>The compressor is operating</li> <li>the discharge temperature exceeds A°C</li> <li>The unit is operating in the 'reset zone' when one of the following conditions are met:</li> <li>The compressor has stopped</li> <li>the discharge temperature is below B°C</li> </ul> |
|         | A = 104 - correction value (a)<br>B = 100 - correction value (a)   |
|         | For the correction value (a), refer to the Page72 "High Discharge Pipe Temperature Control".   |

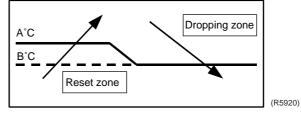


Fig.: Abnormal high discharge temperature control graph

In the dropping zone the unit will react as follows:

- Prohibit the discharge pipe temperature control
- When entering the dropping zone from the reset zone, it will add 20 pulses the expansion valve opening and set a 30 seconds 'opening adjustment timer'.
- Each time the opening adjustment timer reaches zero without leaving the dropping zone, 20 pulses will be added to the expansion valve opening and the opening adjustment timer will be reset.

# Part 5 System Configuration

| 1. | Insta  | llation Manual  | 82   |
|----|--------|---|------|
|    | 1.1    | Indoor Units  | 82   |
|    | 1.2    | Outdoor Units   | 96   |
| 2. | Syste  | em Configuration  | .106 |
| 3. | Instru | uction  | .107 |
|    | 3.1    | Safety Precautions  | 107  |
|    | 3.2    | Names and Functions of Parts  | 108  |
|    | 3.3    | Preparation before Operation  | 110  |
|    | 3.4    | Cooling · "SARARA" DRYING Operation                                 |      |
|    | 3.5    | Heating · "URURU" HUMIDIFYING Operation                             | 113  |
|    | 3.6    | AUTO / MOISTURIZING Operation                                       | 114  |
|    | 3.7    | Adjusting Airflow Direction · Comfort Airflow Mode · Cooling Breeze |      |
|    |        | Airflow Rate  | 115  |
|    | 3.8    | FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING · FRESH AIR SUPPLY                     |      |
|    |        | VENTILATION Operation / HOME LEAVE VENTILATION                      | 116  |
|    | 3.9    | TIMER Operation   | 117  |
|    | 3.10   | COMFORT SLEEP / POWERFUL Operation                                  | 118  |
|    | 3.11   | SET UP  | 119  |
|    | 3.12   | MOLD PROOF Operation  | 120  |
|    | 3.13   | MOLD SHOCK Operation / INFORMATION DISPLAY                          | 121  |
|    |        | Care and Cleaning   |      |
|    |        | Troubleshooting   |      |
|    |        |   |      |

# 1. Installation Manual

# 1.1 Indoor Units

# **Safety Precautions**

- Read these Safety Precautions carefully to ensure correct installation.
- This manual classifies the precautions into WARNING and CAUTION.
- Be sure to follow all the precautions below: they are all important for ensuring safety.

• The following safety symbols are used throughout this manual:

|   | The following salety symbols are used throughout this manual.  |   |                |  |
|---|--|---|----------------|--|
|   | Be sure to observe this instruction.   | Be sure to establish an earth connection. | Never attempt. |  |
| • | After completing installation, test the unit to check for installation errors. Give the user adequate instructions concerning the use and cleaning of the unit |   |                |  |

#### according to the Operation Manual MARNING Installation should be left to the dealer or another professional. Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire. Install the air conditioner according to the instructions given in this manual. Incomplete installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire · Be sure to use the supplied or specified installation parts. Use of other parts may cause the unit to come to lose, water leakage, electrical shock, or fire Install the air conditioner on a solid base that can support the weight of the unit. An inadequate base or incomplete installation may cause injury in the event the unit falls off the base · Electrical work should be carried out in accordance with the installation manual and the national electrical wiring rules or code of practice. Insufficient capacity or incomplete electrical work may cause electrical shock or fire Be sure to use a dedicated power circuit. Never use a power supply shared by another appliance. For wiring, use a cable length enough to cover the entire distance with no connection. Do not use an extension cord. Do not put other loads on the power supply, use a dedicated power circuit. (Failure to do so may cause abnormal heat, electric shock or fire.) · Use the specified types of wires for electrical connections between the indoor and outdoor units. Firmly clamp the interconnecting wires so their terminals receive no external stresses. Incomplete connections or clamping may cause terminal overheating or fire. After connecting interconnecting and supply wiring be sure to shape the cables so that they do not put undue force on the electrical covers or panels. Install covers over the wires. Incomplete cover installation may cause terminal overheating, electrical shock, or fire · If any refrigerant has leaked out during the installation work, ventilate the room. 0 (The refrigerant produces a toxic gas if exposed to flames.) · After all installation is complete, check to make sure that no refrigerant is leaking out. a (The refrigerant produces a toxic gas if exposed to flames.) When installing or relocating the system, be sure to keep the refrigerant circuit free from substances other than the specified refrigerant (R410A), such as air. (Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit causes an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury.) During pump-down, stop the compressor before removing the refrigerant piping. If the compressor is still running and the shut-off valve is open during pump-down, air will be sucked in when the refrigerant piping is removed, causing abnormal pressure in the freezer cycle which will lead to breakage and even injury. • During installation, attach the refrigerant piping securely before running the compressor. If the compressor is not attached and the shut-off valve is open during pump-down, air will be sucked in when the compressor is run, causing abnormal pressure in the freezer cycle which will lead to breakage and even injury. Be sure to establish an earth. Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, arrester, or telephone earth. 4 Incomplete earth may cause electrical shock, or fire. A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner. Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker. Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks, or fire

| Do not install the air conditioner in a place where there is danger of exposure to inflammable gas leakage.     If the gas leaks and builds up around the unit, it may catch fire.  |
|---|
| <ul> <li>Establish drain piping according to the instructions of this manual.<br/>Inadequate piping may cause flooding.</li> </ul>  |
| <ul> <li>Note for installing the outdoor unit. (For heat pump model only.) In cold area where the outside air temperature keep below or around freezing-point for a few days, the outdoor unit's drain may freeze. If so, it is recommended to install an electric heater in order to protect drain from freezing.</li> </ul> |
| <ul> <li>Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method such as with a torque wrench.</li> <li>If the flare nut is tightened too hard, the flare nut may crack after a long time and cause refrigerant leakage.</li> </ul>   |

# Accessories

| A Mounting plate                                       | 1 | E Air supply filter frame                 | 1 | J AAA dry-cell batteries | 2 |
|--|---|---|---|--------------------------|---|
| B Deodorizing filter for streamer                      | 1 | F Indoor unit fixing screws<br>(M4 × 12L) | 3 | (K) Operation manual     | 1 |
| C Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter | 1 | G Wireless remote controller              | 1 | Installation manual      | 1 |
| D Air supply filter                                    | 1 | H Remote controller holder                | 1 |                          |   |

# **Choosing an Installation Site**

• Before choosing the installation site, obtain user approval.

## **1.** Indoor unit.

- The indoor unit should be sited in a place where:
  - 1) the restrictions on installation specified in the indoor unit installation drawings are met,
  - 2) both air intake and exhaust have clear paths met,
  - 3) the unit is not in the path of direct sunlight,
  - 4) the unit is away from the source of heat or steam,
  - 5) there is no source of machine oil vapour (this may shorten indoor unit life),
- 6) cool (warm) air is circulated throughout the room,
- 7) the unit is away from electronic ignition type fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start type) as they may shorten the remote control range,
- 8) the unit is at least 1 metre away from any television or radio set (unit may cause interference with the picture or sound),9) install at the recommended height (1.8m).
- 9) Install at the recommended height (1.0m)

# **2.** Wireless remote controller.

1) Turn on all the fluorescent lamps in the room, if any, and find the site where remote control signals are properly received by the indoor unit (within 7 metres).

# **Indoor Unit Installation Drawings**

# **1.** Precautions for humidifying hose installation work.

- When embedding humidifying hose:
- 1) Cannot be installed to the existing embedded piping. Embedding work is separately necessary.
- The length of the humidifying hose is marked on the hose packing material.
- 1) Use an extension hose (sold separately) when extending the humidifying hose.
  - The length of the humidifying hose needs to be set to ensure humidifying capacity. Cut off any excess hose. Use the remote controller to set the hose length. (Refer to page 12.)
- If the humidifying hose needs to be cut to be laid, cut it, lay it, and connect it using the joint or elbow included with the
  outdoor unit. When doing this, wrap it to prevent air leaks with the binding band included with the outdoor unit.
  (Refer to page 9.)
- When laying the humidifying hose inside the wall, block the ends of the humidifying hose with tape or the like to prevent water or anything else from entering it until it is connected to the indoor unit and outdoor unit ducts.
- Do not bend the humidifying hose more than 90°.

# **Indoor Unit Installation Drawings**

# **2.** Removing and installing indoor unit.

### · Installation method

- 1) Using the  $\triangle$  marks (3 locations) on top of the indoor unit, attach the (A) mounting plate hooks onto the indoor unit.
- 2) Attach the tabs on the bottom frame onto the (A) mounting plate. If the tabs are not hooked onto the plate, remove the front grille to hook them. (Check to see if the tabs are hooked securely.)

#### · Removal method

Dig

Screws

Front panel

D Air supply filter

50mm or more from walls

(on both sides)

(C) Titanium apatite

photocatalytic

air-purifying filter

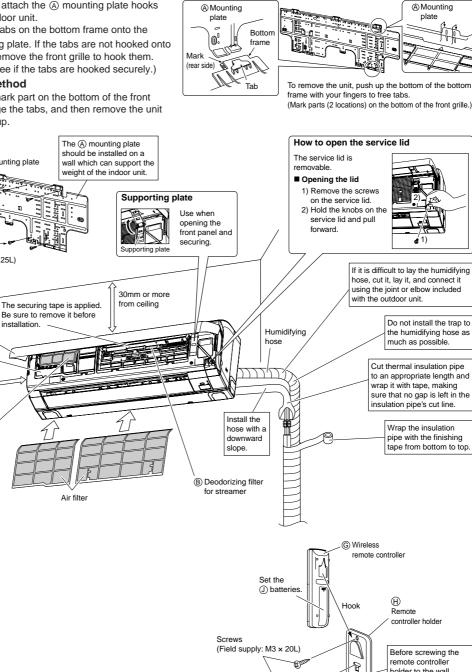
0:

(Field supply: M4 × 25L)

A Mounting plate

installation

Push up the mark part on the bottom of the front grille, discharge the tabs, and then remove the unit while lifting it up.



3

holder to the wall, make sure that control signals are properly received by indoor unit.

# **Installation Tips**

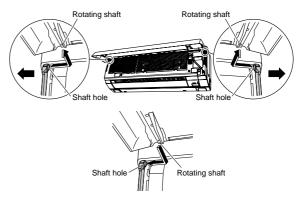
# **1.** Removing and installing front panel.

#### Removal method

- 1) Open the front panel.
- Spread out the shaft hole on the left side and remove the rotating shaft.
   Spread out the shaft hole on the right side as well and remove the rotating shaft.

#### Installation method

Insert the right and left rotating shafts on the front panel into the shaft holes one at a time and slowly close the panel. (Press on both sides of the front panel.)



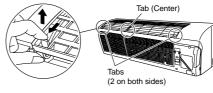
# **2.** Removing and installing the upper panel.

### Removal method

- 1) Remove the front panel and air filter.
- Hold and pull forward 2 tabs on both sides to discharge them, discharge the center tab, and then lift up the upper panel.

#### Installation method

- 1) Push in the upper panel along the guide on the top of the front grille and insert the 3 tabs into the slots on the front grille.
- 2) Push the upper panel down until it clicks.
- 3) Attach the air filter and front panel.







# **Installation Tips**

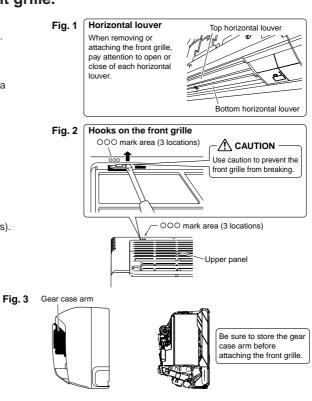
# **3.** Removing and installing the front grille.

#### · Removal method

- 1) Remove the front panel, air filter and upper panel. 2) Fully open the top and bottom horizontal louvers. (See Fig. 1)
- 3) Remove the 3 screws in the front grille.
- 4) Lift the hooks (3 locations) on the front grille with a flathead screwdriver to discharge the tab. (Look for the OOO mark.) (See Fig. 2)
- 5) Pull forward the front grille to remove.

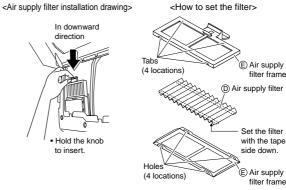
#### • Installation method

- 1) Open the top louver fully and close the bottom louver fully.
- 2) Store the gear case arm in the front grille. (See Fig. 3)
- 3) Attach the front grille to the lower part of the unit. (Use caution not to pinch the horizontal louver.)
- 4) Make sure to firmly latch the top hooks (3 locations). 5) Tighten with the 3 front grille screws.
- 6) Attach the upper panel, air filter and front panel.



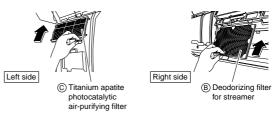
# **4.** Installing the air supply filter.

- 1) Open the front panel to remove the left air filter.
- 2) Set the (1) air supply filter to the (2) air supply filter frame.
- 3) Attach the (E) air supply filter frame.
- 4) Replace the left air filter to its original position and close the front panel.



# 5. Installing the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter and deodorizing filter for streamer.

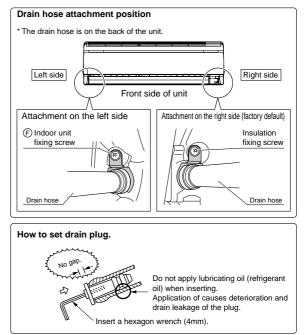
- 1) Open the front panel to pull out the air filter.
- 2) Attach the © titanium apatite photocatalytic airpurifying filter.
- 3) Attach the B deodorizing filter for streamer.
- 4) Replace the air filter to its original position and close the front panel.



# **6.** How to replace the drain plug and drain hose.

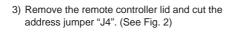
#### Replacing onto the left side

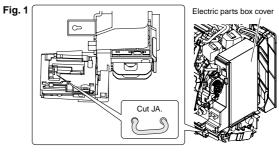
- 1) Remove the insulation fixing screws on the right to remove the drain hose.
- Reattach the insulation fixing screw on the right as it was.
- \*(Forgetting to attach this may cause water leakages.)
- Remove the drain plug on the left side and attach it to the right side.
- 4) Insert the drain hose and tighten with included(F) indoor unit fixing screw.

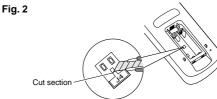


# 7. How to set the different addresses.

- When 2 indoor units are installed in one room, the 2 wireless remote controllers can be set for different addresses.
  - 1) Remove the front grille. (3 screws)
  - 2) Cut the address jumper "JA". (See Fig. 1)





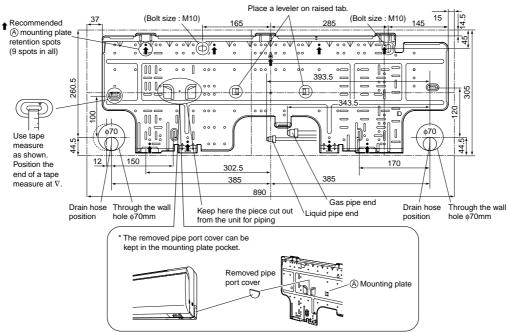


# **Indoor Unit Installation**

# **1.** Installing the mounting plate.

- The (a) mounting plate should be installed on a wall which can support the weight of the indoor unit.
- 1) Temporarily secure the (a) mounting plate to the wall, make sure that the panel is completely level, and mark the boring points on the wall.
- 2) Secure the (A) mounting plate to the wall with screws.

#### Recommended mounting plate retention spots and Dimensions



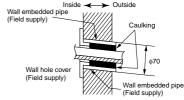
# 2. Boring a wall hole and installing wall embedded pipe.

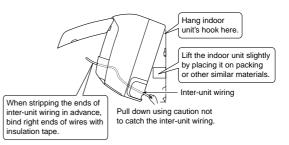
- For walls containing metal frame or metal board, be sure to use a wall embedded pipe and wall cover in the feed-through hole to prevent possible heat, electrical shock, or fire.
- Be sure to caulk the gaps around the pipes with caulking material to prevent water leakage.
  - 1) Bore a feed-through hole of 70mm in the wall so it has a down slope toward the outside.
- 2) Insert a wall pipe into the hole.
- 3) Insert a wall cover into wall pipe.
- 4) After completing refrigerant piping, wiring, and drain piping, caulk pipe hole gap with putty.

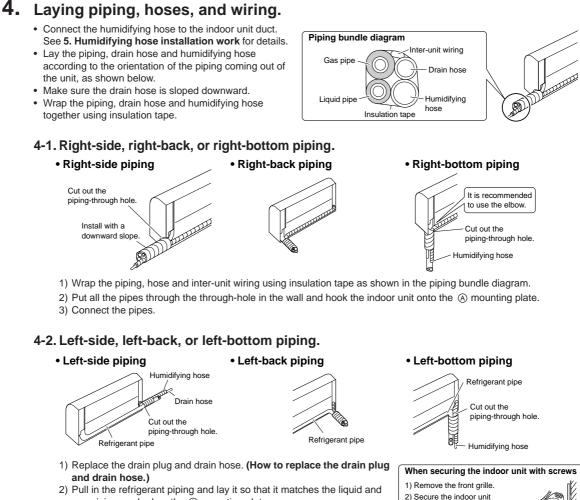
# **3.** Installing inter-unit wiring.

- 1) Open the front panel and remove the service lid.
- Pull out the inter-unit wiring from the back of the indoor unit to the front. It is easier to pull out if bending up the wire edge in advance.
- To connect the inter-unit wiring after hooking the unit onto the 

   mounting plate, connect the inter-unit wiring as shown in the figure at right.

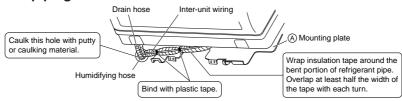






- gas piping marked on the (A) mounting plate.
- 3) Hook the indoor unit onto the A mounting plate.
- 4) Connect the pipes. If it is difficult to do, remove the front panel first.
- 5) Wrap the insulation on the piping with insulation tape. If you are not replacing the drain hose, store it in the location shown below.

#### 4-3. Left-back piping.



with the (F) indoor unit

€ M4 × 12L

fixing screws.

3) Install the front grille

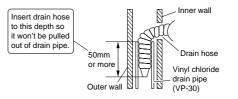
# **Indoor Unit Installation**

### 4-4. Wall embedded piping.

Follow the instructions given under

#### Left-side, left-back, or left-bottom piping

1) Insert the drain hose to this depth so it won't be pulled out of the drain pipe.



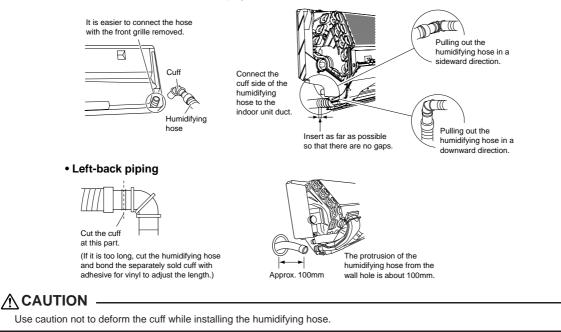
## 

Do not bundle the power code with a binding band, a twist tie or other method. This may cause heat, electric shock or fire.

# 5. Humidifying hose installation work.

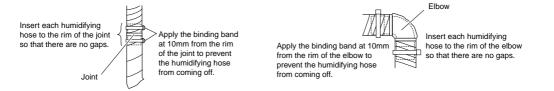
#### 5-1. Connecting to the indoor unit.

Connect the cuff side of the humidifying hose to the indoor unit duct.



## 5-2. Connecting the cut humidifying hoses.

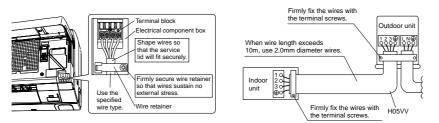
• When install the cut humidifying hoses, follow the instructions below.



• Use not more than two elbows to ensure humidifying capacity.

# 6. Wiring.

- 1) Strip wire ends (15mm).
- 2) Match wire colours with terminal numbers on indoor and outdoor unit's terminal blocks and firmly screw wires to the corresponding terminals.
- 3) Connect the earth wires to the corresponding terminals.
- 4) Pull wires to make sure that they are securely latched up, then retain wires with wire retainer.
- 5) In case of connecting to an adapter system. Run the remote control cable and attach the S21.
- (Refer to 7. Connecting to the HA system.)
- 6) Shape the wires so that the service lid fits securely, then close service lid.

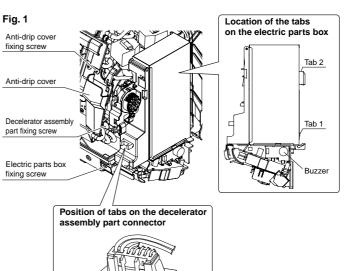


# 

- 1) Do not use tapped wires, strand wires, extensioncords, or starburst connections, as they may cause overheating, electrical shock, or fire.
- 2) Do not use locally purchased electrical parts inside the product. (Do not branch the power for the drain pump, etc., from the terminal block.) Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

# 7. Connecting to the HA system.

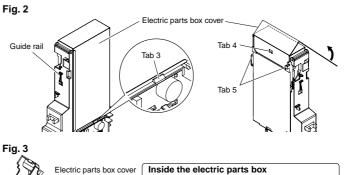
- 1) Remove the front grille. (3 screws)
- 2) Remove the decelerator assembly parts.
  - (1 screw)2-1) Remove the decelerator assembly part screws. (See Fig. 1)
  - 2-2) Remove the decelerator assembly part connector. Remove by pressing on the tabs on the bottom of the connector.
  - (See the tab position diagram 1)
- 3) Remove the electric parts box.
  - (1 screw, 2 tabs)
  - 3-1) Remove the electric parts box fixing screw.
  - 3-2) Pull the electric parts box toward you and discharge the tab 2.

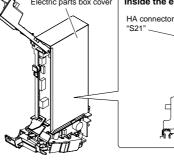


Tah

# **Indoor Unit Installation**

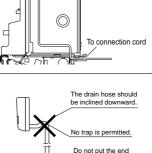
- 4) Remove the electric parts box cover.(3 tabs) (Refer to Fig. 2)
  - 4-1) Discharge the tab 3.
  - 4-2) Pull up the electric parts box cover slowly, discharge the tab 4, slide up, and discharge the tab 5.
- 5) Insert the connection cord into the HA connector "S21".
- 6) Lay the connection cord as shown in "Fig. 3".
- 7) Replace the electric parts box cover and electric parts box as they were.
- 8) Attach the decelerator assembly part along with the guide rail. (Refer to Fig. 2)
- 9) Install the front grille.





Drain hose supplied with

the indoor unit



of the h

on drain hose

11111111

Commercially available rigid

polyvinyl chloride pipe (nominal diameter 13mm)

# 8. Drain piping.

1) Connect the drain hose, as described right.

- 2) Remove the air filters and pour some water into the drain pan to check the water flows smoothly.
- 3) When drain hose requires extension, obtain an extension hose commercially available.

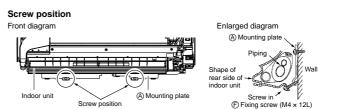
Be sure to thermally insulate the indoor section of the extension hose.

4) When connecting a rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (nominal diameter 13mm) directly to the drain hose attached to the indoor unit as with embedded piping work, use any commercially available drain socket (nominal diameter 13mm) as a joint.

# **9.** Improving installation strength.

- We recommend screwing the indoor unit onto a

   mounting plate in order to improve the
   installation strength.
- 1) Remove the front grille.
- 2) Screw in the indoor unit with (F) fixing screws.
- 3) Attach the front grille.



Commercially available drain

(nominal diameter 13mm)

socket

Indoor unit

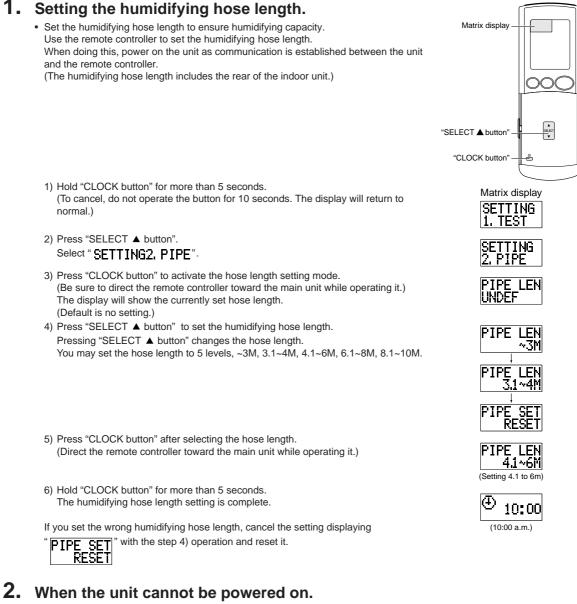
drain hose

1111

Heat insulatio (Field supply)

on tube

# Setting the Humidifying Hose Length



· When setting the humidifying hose length without powering on the unit, the display shows

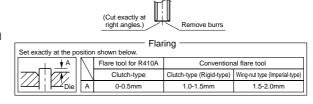
**PIPE LEN** " with the step 5) operation shown above but the remote controller remembers the set hose length. UNDEF

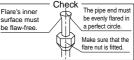
(When the customer uses the unit, the humidifying hose length information is sent to the indoor unit to be set.)

# **Refrigerant Piping Work**

# **1.** Flaring the pipe end.

- 1) Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.
- 2) Remove burrs with the cut surface facing downward so that the chips do not enter the pipe.
- 3) Put the flare nut on the pipe.
- 4) Flare the pipe.
- 5) Check that the flaring is properly made.





Torque wrench

Inter-unit wiring

Drain hose

Humidifying

hose

. Liquid pipe

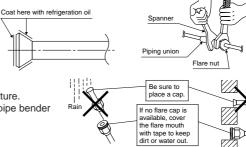
# 

- 1) Do not use mineral oil on flared part.
- 2) Prevent mineral oil from getting into the system as this would reduce the lifetime of the units.
- 3) Never use piping which has been used for previous installations. Only use parts which are delivered with the unit.
- 4) Do never install a drier to this R410A unit in order to guarantee its lifetime.
- 5) The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.
- 6) Incomplete flaring may cause refrigerant gas leakage.

# 2. Refrigerant piping.

- Align the centres of both flares and tighten the flare nuts 3 or 4 turns by hand. Then tighten them fully with the torque wrenches.
- Use torque wrenches when tightening the flare nuts to prevent damage to the flare nuts and escaping gas.
- To prevent gas leakage, apply refrigeration oil on both inner and outer surfaces of the flare. (Use refrigeration oil for R410A.)

| Flare nut tightening torque |                   |  |  |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| · · · · · ·                 | · · ·             |  |  |
| Gas side                    | Liquid side       |  |  |
| 3/8 inch                    | 1/4 inch          |  |  |
| 32.7-39.9N • m              | 14.2-17.2N • m    |  |  |
| (330-407kgf • cm)           | (144-175kgf • cm) |  |  |



Finishing tape

Gas pi

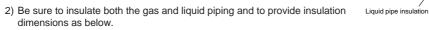
Gas pipe

### 2-1. Caution on piping handling.

- Protect the open end of the pipe against dust and moisture.
   All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible. Use a pipe bender for bending.
  - (Bending radius should be 30 to 40mm or larger.)

#### 2-2. Selection of copper and heat insulation materials.

- When using commercial copper pipes and fittings, observe the following:
- 1) Insulation material: Polyethylene foam
  - Heat transfer rate: 0.041 to 0.052W/mK (0.035 to 0.045 kcal/(mh•°C)) Refrigerant gas pipe's surface temperature reaches 110°C max. Choose heat insulation materials that will withstand this temperature.



| Thickness 0.8mm |             | Thickness 10mm Min.            |                                   |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| O.D. 9.5mm      | O.D. 6.4mm  | I.D. 12-15mm                   | I.D. 8-10mm                       |
| Gas side        | Liquid side | Gas pipe thermal<br>insulation | Liquid pipe thermal<br>insulation |

3) Use separate thermal insulation pipes for gas and liquid refrigerant pipes.

# **Trial Operation and Testing**

# **1.** Trial operation and testing.

1-1. Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it falls in the specified range.

### 1-2. Trial operation should be carried out in either cooling or heating mode.

- In cooling mode, select the lowest programmable temperature; in heating mode, select the highest programmable temperature.
  - 1) Trial operation may be disabled in either mode depending on the room temperature.
  - Use the remote controller for trial operation as described below.
  - 2) After trial operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level (26°C to 28°C in cooling mode, 20°C to 24°C in heating mode).
  - 3) For protection, the system disables restart operation for 3 minutes after it is turned off.
- 1-3. To perform a test run for humidifying operation, activate test run mode from the remote controller following the instructions below and press the "HUMIDIFY" button.
- 1-4. Operate the unit in accordance with the operation manual to check that it operates normally.
  - Even when the air conditioner is not operating, it consumes some electric power. If the customer is not going to use the unit soon after it is installed, turn off the breaker to avoid wasting electricity.

# Trial operation from remote controller

- 1) Hold the "CLOCK" button for 5 seconds.
- (The matrix display will appear on the remote controller.)
- 2) Display "SETTING " on the matrix display of the remote controller and press the "CLOCK" button.
- 3) "7" will be displayed and the unit will enter test run mode.
- 4) Press the button for test run mode.
  - Tess the bullon for test run mode.
     Test run mode will stop automatically after a
  - Test run mode will stop automatically after around 30 minutes. Press the ON/OFF button to force the test-run to stop.

# 2. Test items.

| Test items  | Symptom<br>(diagnostic display on RC)  | Check |
|---|--|-------|
| Indoor and outdoor units are installed properly on solid bases.   | Fall, vibration, noise   |       |
| Did you install the air supply filter?  | Noise, water leakage   |       |
| Did you install the deodorizing filter for the streamer and the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter? | Noise, water leakage   |       |
| Have you performed a gas leak test?   | Incomplete cooling/heating function  |       |
| No refrigerant gas leaks.   | Incomplete cooling/heating function  |       |
| Refrigerant gas and liquid pipes and indoor drain hose extension are thermally insulated.                             | Water leakage  |       |
| Draining line is properly installed.  | Water leakage  |       |
| Does the drain hose produce abnormal noise (perking sound) when using the ventilation fan or others?                  | Use of separately sold air cut drain plug.   |       |
| System is properly earthed.   | Electrical leakage   |       |
| The specified wires are used for inter-unit wiring connections.   | Inoperative or burn damage   |       |
| Indoor or outdoor unit's air intake or exhaust has clear path of air.<br>Shut-off valves are opened.                  | Incomplete cooling/heating function  |       |
| Indoor unit properly receives remote controller commands.   | Inoperative  |       |
| Did you check the address setting?  | Inoperative  |       |
| Did you set the humidifying hose length?  | <ul> <li>LED lamp blinks at power on.</li> <li>The buzzer sounds during a test run.</li> <li>Poor performance and noise</li> </ul> |       |

3P177302-1

#### 1.2 **Outdoor Units**

# **Safety Precautions**

- · Read these Safety Precautions carefully to ensure correct installation.
- This manual classifies the precautions into WARNING and CAUTION.
- Be sure to follow all the precautions below: they are all important for ensuring safety.

CAUTION......Failure to follow any of CAUTION may result in grave consequences in some cases.

The following safety symbols are used throughout this manual:

| Be sure to observe this instruction.                | Be sure to establish an earth connection.                | Never attempt.              |
|---|--|-----------------------------|
| After completing installation, test the unit to ch  | eck for installation errors. Give the user adequate inst | ructions concerning the use |
| and cleaning of the unit according to the Operation | ation Manual.  |                             |

| <u>∕</u> MARNING   |           |  |  |  |
|--|-----------|--|--|--|
| Installation should be left to the dealer or another professional.     Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.   |           |  |  |  |
| Install the air conditioner according to the instructions given in this manual. Incomplete installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Be sure to use the supplied or specified installation parts.</li> <li>Use of other parts may cause the unit to come to lose, water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.</li> </ul>   |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Install the air conditioner on a solid base that can support the weight of the unit.</li> <li>An inadequate base or incomplete installation may cause injury in the event the unit falls off the base.</li> </ul>   |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Electrical work should be carried out in accordance with the installation manual and the national electrical v<br/>rules or code of practice. Insufficient capacity or incomplete electrical work may cause electrical shock or fire.</li> </ul>  | viring    |  |  |  |
| • Be sure to use a dedicated power circuit. Never use a power supply shared by another appliance.  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>For wiring, use a cable length enough to cover the entire distance with no connection.</li> <li>Do not use an extension cord. Do not put other loads on the power supply, use a dedicated power circuit.</li> <li>(Failure to do so may cause abnormal heat, electric shock or fire.)</li> </ul>  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Use the specified types of wires for electrical connections between the indoor and outdoor units. Firmly clamp t<br/>connecting wires so their terminals receive no external stresses. Incomplete connections or clamping may cause terminal overheatin</li> </ul>  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>After connecting interconnecting and supply wiring be sure to shape the cables so that they do not put undue force<br/>electrical covers or panels. Install covers over the wires. Incomplete cover installation may cause terminal overheating, electrical shock</li> </ul>  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>If any refrigerant has leaked out during the installation work, ventilate the room.<br/>(The refrigerant produces a toxic gas if exposed to flames.)</li> </ul>   | 0         |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>After all installation is complete, check to make sure that no refrigerant is leaking out.<br/>(The refrigerant produces a toxic gas if exposed to flames.)</li> </ul>  | 0         |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>When installing or relocating the system, be sure to keep the refrigerant circuit free from substances other th<br/>specified refrigerant (R410A), such as air.</li> <li>(Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit causes an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury</li> </ul>         |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>During pump-down, stop the compressor before removing the refrigerant piping.         If the compressor is still running and the stop valve is open during pump-down, air will be sucked in when the refrigerant piping is removing abnormal pressure in the freezer cycle which will lead to breakage and even injury.     </li> </ul> | oved,     |  |  |  |
| • During installation, attach the refrigerant piping securely before running the compressor.<br>If the compressor is not attached and the stop valve is open during pump-down, air will be sucked in when the compressor is run, cau<br>abnormal pressure in the freezer cycle which will lead to breakage and even injury.                      | sing      |  |  |  |
| • Be sure to establish an earth. Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, arrester, or telephone earth.<br>Incomplete earth may cause electrical shock, or fire. A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.   | e         |  |  |  |
| • Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker. Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks, or fire.   |           |  |  |  |
|  |           |  |  |  |
| • Do not install the air conditioner in a place where there is danger of exposure to inflammable gas leakage.<br>If the gas leaks and builds up around the unit, it may catch fire.  | $\oslash$ |  |  |  |
| Establish drain piping according to the instructions of this manual. Inadequate piping may cause flooding.   |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Note for installing the outdoor unit. (For heat pump model only.) In cold area where the outside air temperature keep below or around freezing-point for a few days, the outdoor unit's drain may freeze If so, it is recommended to install an electric heater in order to protect drain from freezing.</li> </ul>                     | -         |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method such as with a torque wrench.</li> <li>If the flare nut is tightened too hard, the flare nut may crack after a long time and cause refrigerant leakage.</li> </ul>  |           |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Make sure to provide for adequate measures in order to prevent that the outdoor unit be used as a shelter by small anin<br/>Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire. Please instruct the customer to keep the area<br/>the unit clean.</li> </ul>                                      |           |  |  |  |

Do not squeeze the top plate of the outdoor unit while removing it. Sharp metal plates may cause injury.

# Accessories

Accessories supplied with the outdoor unit:

| (A) Installation Manual | 1 | B Drain plug   | 1 |
|-------------------------|---|----------------|---|
| © Humidifying hose      | 1 | Dint           | 1 |
|                         | 1 | E Binding band | 5 |

# **Precautions for Selecting the Location**

- 1) Choose a place solid enough to bear the weight and vibration of the unit, where the operation noise will not be amplified.
- 2) Choose a location where the hot air discharged from the unit or the operation noise will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
- 3) Avoid places near a bedroom or similar, so that the operation noise will cause no trouble.
- 4) There must be sufficient spaces for carrying the unit into and out of the site.
- 5) There must be sufficient space for air passage and no obstructions around the air inlet and the air outlet.
- 6) The site must be free from the possibility of flammable gas leakage in a nearby place.
- 7) Install units, power cords and inter-unit cables at least 3 meter away from television and radio sets. This is to prevent interference to images and sounds. (Noises may be heard even if they are more than 3 meter away depending on radio wave conditions.)
- 8) In coastal areas or other places with salty atmosphere of sulfate gas, corrosion may shorten the life of the air conditioner.
- 9) Since drain flows out of the outdoor unit, do not place under the unit anything which must be kept away from moisture.

#### NOTE

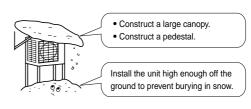
Cannot be installed hanging from ceiling or stacked.

# A CAUTION -

When operating the air conditioner in a low outdoor ambient temperature, be sure to follow the instructions described below.

- 1) To prevent exposure to wind, install the outdoor unit with its suction side facing the wall.
- Never install the outdoor unit at a site where the suction side may be exposed directly to wind.
   To prevent exposure to wind, it is recommended to install a baffle

plate on the air discharge side of the outdoor unit.

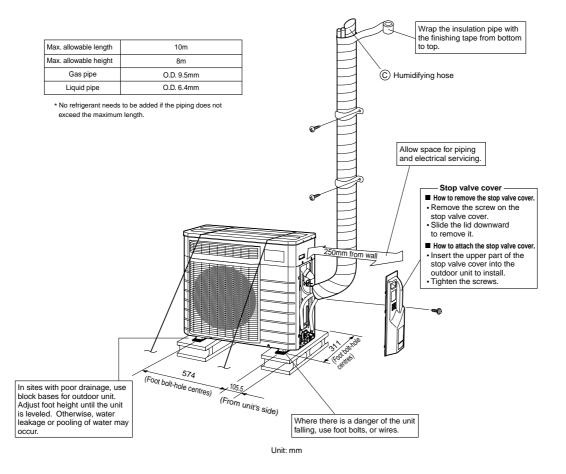


4) In heavy snowfall areas, select an installation site where the snow will not affect the unit.

# **Outdoor Unit Installation Drawings**

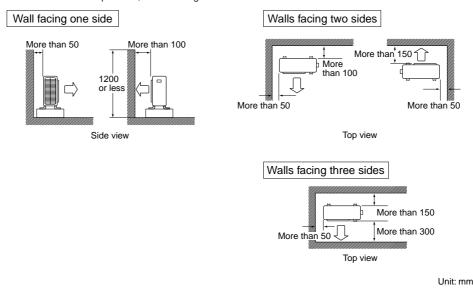
### **1.** Precautions for humidifying hose installation work.

- Moisture on the outdoor unit is brought to the indoor unit together with air around the outdoor unit during humidifying operation. Install the outdoor unit in a clean and calm location.
- When embedding © humidifying hose:
- 1) Cannot be installed to the existing embedded piping. Embedding work is separately necessary.
- The length of the  $\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}$  humidifying hose is marked on the hose packing material.
- 1) Use an extension hose (sold separately) when extending the  $\bigodot$  humidifying hose.
- 2) The length of the © humidifying hose needs to be set to ensure humidifying capacity. Cut off any excess hose. Use the remote controller to set the hose length.
- When it is difficult to install without cutting the © humidifying hose, cut the hose and join it with included © joint or © elbow after the installation. When doing this, bind the hose using included r binding band so that there is no air leakage. (Refer to **Connecting the Humidifying Hose** on page 8.)
- When laying the © humidifying hose inside the wall, block the ends of the © humidifying hose with tape or the like to prevent water or anything else from entering it until it is connected to the indoor unit and outdoor unit ducts.
- Do not bend the  $\odot$  humidifying hose more than 90°.



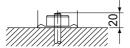
# **Installation Guidelines**

Where a wall or other obstacle is in the path of outdoor unit's intake or exhaust airflow, follow the installation guidelines below.
For any of the below installation patterns, the wall height on the exhaust side should be 1200mm or less.



# **Precautions on Installation**

- Check the strength and level of the installation ground so that the unit will not cause any operating vibration or noise after installed.
  In accordance with the foundation drawing, fix the unit securely by means of the foundation bolts. (Prepare four sets of M8 or M10 foundation bolts, nuts and washers each which are available on the market.)
- It is best to screw in the foundation bolts until their length are 20mm from the foundation surface.



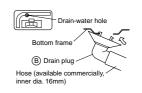
# **Outdoor Unit Installation**

### **1.** Installing outdoor unit.

- 1) When installing the outdoor unit, refer to "Precautions for Selecting the Location" and the "Outdoor Unit Installation Drawings".
- 2) If drain work is necessary, follow the procedures below.

### **2.** Drain work (heat pump-models).

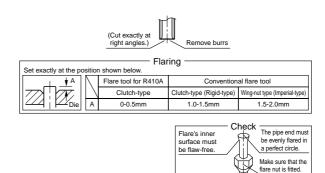
- 1) Use (B) drain plug for drainage.
- If the drain port is covered by a mounting base or floor surface, place additional foot bases of at least 30mm in height under the outdoor unit's feet.
- In cold areas, do not use a drain hose with the outdoor unit. (Otherwise, drain water may freeze, impairing heating performance.)



# **Outdoor Unit Installation**

### **3.** Flaring the pipe end.

- 1) Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.
- 2) Remove burrs with the cut surface facing
- downward so that the chips do not enter the pipe. 3) Put the flare nut on the pipe.
- 4) Flare the pipe.
- 5) Check that the flaring is properly made.

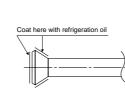


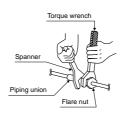
### 

- 1) Do not use mineral oil on flared part.
- 2) Prevent mineral oil from getting into the system as this would reduce the lifetime of the units.
- 3) Never use piping which has been used for previous installations. Only use parts which are delivered with the unit.
- 4) Do never install a drier to this R410A unit in order to guarantee its lifetime.
- 5) The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.
- 6) Incomplete flaring may cause refrigerant gas leakage.

### 4. Refrigerant piping.

- 1) Align the centres of both flares and tighten the flare nuts 3 or 4 turns by hand. Then tighten them fully with the torque wrenches.
- Use torque wrenches when tightening the flare nuts to prevent damage to the flare nuts and escaping gas.
- 2) To prevent gas leakage, apply refrigeration machine oil on both inner and outer surfaces of the flare. (Use refrigeration oil for R410A.)





|                      | Flare nut tightening torque |                                     | Valve cap tightening torque         |                                     |  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
|                      | Gas side                    | Liquid side                         | Gas side                            | Liquid side                         |  |
| 32.7-39.9N • m 14.2- |                             | 1/4 inch                            | 3/8 inch 1/4 inch                   |                                     |  |
|                      |                             | 14.2-17.2N • m<br>(144-175kgf • cm) | 21.6-27.4N • m<br>(220-280kgf • cm) | 21.6-27.4N • m<br>(220-280kgf • cm) |  |
|                      |                             |                                     | Convice next con                    | 10.0.11.701                         |  |

| · ·     | 0          | , | `     | 0           |     |
|---------|------------|---|-------|-------------|-----|
| Service | e port cap | ) | 10.8  | 8-14.7N •   | m   |
| tighten | ing torque | е | (110- | -150kgf • d | cm) |

### **5.** Purging air and checking gas leakage.

• When piping work is completed, it is necessary to purge the air and check for gas leakage.

#### 

- 1) Do not mix any substance other than the specified refrigerant (R410A) into the refrigeration cycle.
- 2) When refrigerant gas leaks occur, ventilate the room as soon and as much as possible.
- 3) R410A, as well as other refrigerants, should always be recovered and never be released directly into the environment .
- 4) Use a vacuum pump for R410A exclusively. Using the same vacuum pump for different refrigerants may damage the vacuum pump or the unit.
- If using additional refrigerant, perform air purging from the refrigerant pipes and Compound Droccure indoor unit using a vacuum pump, then charge additional refrigerant. Use a hexagonal wrench (4mm) to operate the stop valve rod. C Gaug All refrigerant pipe joints should be tightened with a torque wrench at the specified Q Gas stop tightening torque. Cha Vacuum pu Liquid stop valve 1) Connect projection side of charging hose (which comes from gauge manifold) to gas stop valve's service port. 2) Fully open gauge manifold's low-pressure valve (Lo) and completely close its high-pressure valve (Hi). (High-pressure valve subsequently requires no operation.) 3) Do vacuum pumping and make sure that the compound pressure gauge reads -0.1MPa (-76cmHg). (The vacuum pump should run for at least 10 min.) Close gauge manifold's low-pressure valve (Lo) and stop vacuum pump. (Keep this state for a few minutes to make sure that the compound pressure gauge pointer does not swing back.)\*1. 5) Remove covers from liquid stop valve and gas stop valve Turn the liquid stop valve's rod 90 degrees counterclockwise with a hexagonal wrench to open valve. 6) Close it after 5 seconds, and check for gas leakage. Using soapy water, check for gas leakage from indoor unit's flare and outdoor unit's flare and valve rods. After the check is complete, wipe all soapy water off. Disconnect charging hose from gas stop valve's service port, then fully open liquid and gas stop valves. 7) (Do not attempt to turn valve rod beyond its stop.) 8) Tighten valve caps and service port caps for the liquid and gas stop valves with a torque wrench at the specified torques.

\*1. If the compound pressure gauge pointer swings back, refrigerant may have water content or a loose pipe joint may exists. Check all pipe joints and retighten nuts as needed, then repeat steps 2) through 4).

# **Outdoor Unit Installation**

### **6.** Refilling the refrigerant.

Check the type of refrigerant to be used on the machine nameplate.

#### Precautions when adding R410A

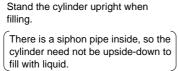
Fill from the liquid pipe in liquid form.

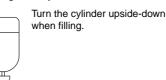
- It is a mixed refrigerant, so adding it in gas form may cause the refrigerant composition to change, preventing normal operation.
- 1) Before filling, check whether the cylinder has a siphon attached or not. (It should have something like "liquid filling siphon attached" displayed on it.)

Filling a cylinder with an attached siphon

Filling other cylinders







Be sure to place a cap

If no flare cap is available, cover the

tape to keep dirt or water out.

flare mouth with

• Be sure to use the R410A tools to ensure pressure and to prevent foreign objects entering.

### 7. Refrigerant piping work.

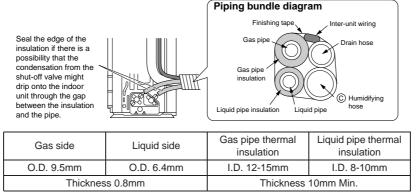
#### 7-1 Cautions on pipe handling.

- Protect the open end of the pipe against dust and moisture.
   All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible. Use a pipe bender for bending.
  - (Bending radius should be 30 to 40mm or larger.)

#### 7-2 Selection of copper and heat insulation materials.

When using commercial copper pipes and fittings, observe the following:

- 1) Insulation material: Polyethylene foam
- Heat transfer rate: 0.041 to 0.052W/mK (0.035 to 0.045kcal/mh•°C)
- Refrigerant gas pipe's surface temperature reaches 110°C max. Choose heat insulation materials that will withstand this temperature.
- 2) Be sure to insulate both the gas and liquid piping and to provide insulation dimensions as below.



3) Use separate thermal insulation pipes for gas and liquid refrigerant pipes.

fying

# **Pump Down Operation**

#### In order to protect the environment, be sure to pump down when relocating or disposing of the unit.

- 1) Remove the valve cap from liquid stop valve and gas stop valve.
- 2) Carry out forced cooling operation.
- 3) After five to ten minutes, close the liquid stop valve with a hexagonal wrench.
- After two to three minutes, close the gas stop valve and stop forced cooling operation.

#### How to force cooling operation mode

- Using the indoor unit operation/stop button
- Press the indoor unit operation/stop button for at least five seconds. (Operation will start.)
  - Forced cooling operation will stop automatically after around 15 minutes. To force a test run to stop, press the indoor unit operation/stop button.

#### A CAUTION -

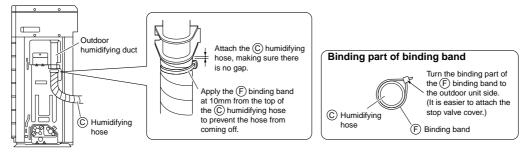
After closing the liquid stop valve, close the gas stop valve within three minutes, then stop the forced operation .

# **Connecting the Humidifying Hose**

### **1.** Connecting the humidifying hose.

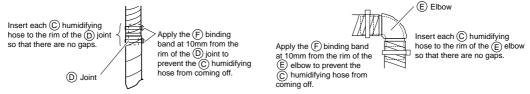
1) Connect the © humidifying hose to the outdoor humidifying duct.

2) Apply a F binding band to prevent the C humidifying hose from coming off.

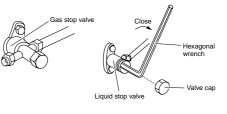


### **2.** Connecting the cut humidifying hoses.

• When installing the cut (c) humidifying hoses, follow the instructions below.



• Use not more than 2 elbows to ensure humidifying capacity.



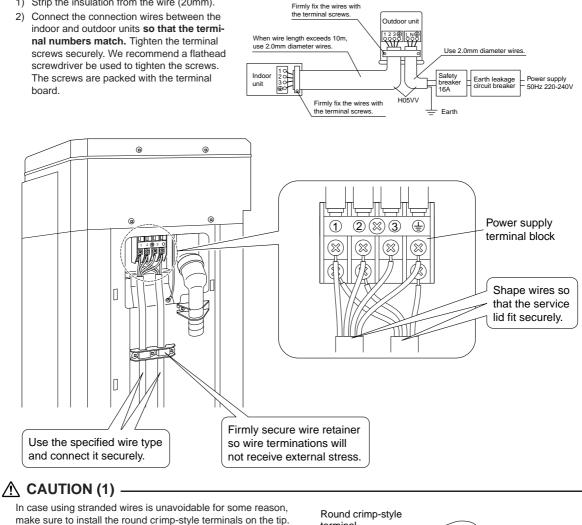
# Wiring

### 

- 1) Do not use tapped wires, stranded wires (CAUTION (1)), extension cords, or starburst connections, as they may cause overheating, electrical shock, or fire.
- 2) Do not use locally purchased electrical parts inside the product. (Do not branch the power for the drain pump, etc., from the terminal block.) Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.
- 3) Be sure to install an earth leak detector. (One that can handle higher harmonics.) (This unit uses an inverter, which means that it must be used an earth leak detector capable handling harmonics in order to prevent malfunctioning of the earth leak detector itself.)
- 4) Use an all-pole disconnection type breaker with at least 3mm between the contact point gaps.
- 5) The earth leakage circuit breaker must operate at 30mA or lower.

· Do not turn ON the safety breaker until all work is completed.

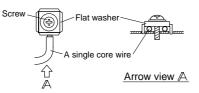
1) Strip the insulation from the wire (20mm).



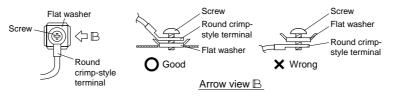
Place the round crimp-style terminals on the wires up to the covered part and secure in place.



<Ground terminal installation> 1) Use the following method when installing a single core wire.

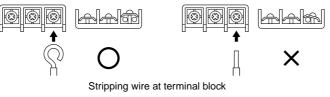


2) Use the following method when installing the round crimp-style terminal.



### A CAUTION (2)

When connecting the connection wires to the terminal board using a single core wire, be sure to perform curling. Problems with the work may cause heat and fires.



# **Test Run and Final Check**

### **1.** Trial operation and testing.

- Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it falls in the specified range.
- See "Test Run and Final Check" in the installation manual that came with the indoor unit for details on how to perform the test run and what to check for.

### **2.** Test items.

| Test Items   | Symptom<br>(diagnostic display on RC) | Check |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Outdoor unit is installed properly on a solid base.  | Fall, vibration, noise                |       |
| No refrigerant gas leaks.  | Incomplete cooling/heating function   |       |
| Refrigerant gas and liquid pipes and indoor drain hose extension are ther-<br>mally insulated. | Water leakage                         |       |
| Draining line is properly installed.   | Water leakage                         |       |
| System is properly earthed.  | Electrical leakage                    |       |
| The specified wires are used for interconnecting wire connections.                             | Inoperative or burn damage            |       |
| Outdoor unit's air intake or exhaust has clear path of air.<br>Stop valves are opened.         | Incomplete cooling/heating function   |       |

3P177302-2

# 2. System Configuration

After the installation and test operation of the room air conditioner have been completed, it should be operated and handled as described below. Every user would like to know the correct method of operation of the room air conditioner, to check if it is capable of cooling (or heating) well, and to know a clever method of using it.

In order to meet this expectation of the users, giving sufficient explanations taking enough time can be said to reduce about 80% of the requests for servicing. However good the installation work is and however good the functions are, the customer may blame either the room air conditioner or its installation work because of improper handling. The installation work and handing over of the unit can only be considered to have been completed when its handling has been explained to the user without using technical terms but giving full knowledge of the equipment.

# 3. Instruction

#### **Safety Precautions** 3.1

# **Safety Precautions**

- Keep this manual where the operator can easily find them. Read this manual attentively before starting up the unit.
- For safety reason the operator must read the following cautions carefully. This manual classifies precautions into WARNING and CAUTION. Be sure to follow all precautions below: they are all important for ensuring safety.



amplify the operation noise or vibration.

operation noise will not annoy your neighbours

A place from where the air discharged from the outdoor unit or the

# 3.2 Names and Functions of Parts

# **Names of Parts**

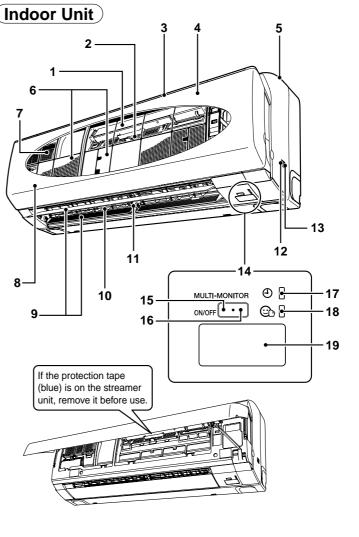
### Indoor Unit

- 1. Streamer unit: (page 20-22.)
- 2. Deodorizing filter for streamer (Black)
- 3. Air inlet
- 4. Front panel
- 5. Upper panel
- 6. Air filter (Light blue): (page 19.)
- 7. Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (Black): (page 20-22.)
- 8. Air supply filter (Yellow): (page 23.)
- **9. Horizontal louver:** (page 10.)
- 10. Vertical louver:
- In the air outlet. (page 10.)
- 11. Air outlet
- 12. Room humidity sensor:
- It senses the air humidity around the indoor unit.
   13. Room temperature sensor:
  - It senses the air temperature around the indoor unit.
- 14. Display
- 15. Indoor unit ON/OFF switch:
  - Push this switch once to start operation.
     Push once again to stop it.
- 16. Multi-colored indicator lamp:
  - The lamp color changes according to the operation.
    - HEATING ...... Red
       "URURU" HUMIDIFYING /
    - HUMID HEATING ...... Orange
    - COOLING ...... Green
  - "SARARA" DRYING /
  - DRY COOLING ...... Yellow • The lamp color also changes according
  - to the optional function.
    FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING / FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION ... White (Only for the first 2 seconds during operation of the air conditioner.)
- 17. TIMER lamp (Orange): (page 12.)
- 18. MOISTURIZING lamp (Green): (page 9.)
- 19. Signal receiver:
- 19. Signal receiver:
  - Receives / sends signals from/to the remote controller.
     The multi-colored indicates lower blinks with
  - The multi-colored indicator lamp blinks with beep sound to indicate signal reception.
    Operation start ......two beeps
  - Operation start ......two beeps
     Settings changed .....one beep
  - Operation stop .....long beep

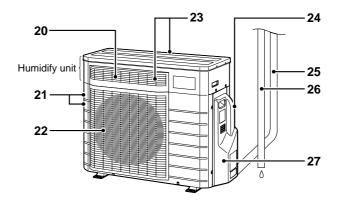
### Outdoor Unit

- 20. Humidify unit air outlet: (Front side)
- 21. Air inlet: (Back and left side)
- 22. Air outlet
- 23. Humidify unit air intake: (Front and back)
- 24. Outdoor temperature sensor:
  - It senses the air temperature around the outdoor unit. (Back side)
- 25. Refrigerant piping, humidifying hose and inter-unit cable
- 26. Drain hose:
- Drains water coming from the indoor unit. **27. Earth terminal:** 
  - It is inside of this cover.

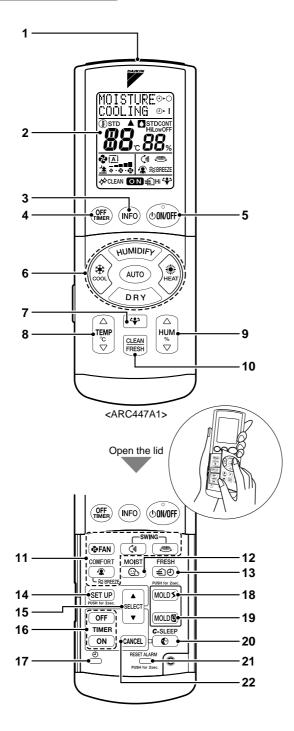




Outdoor Unit



### **Remote Controller**



#### Remote Controller

#### 1. Transmitter / Receiver

#### 2. Display:

 It displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays ON for the purpose of explanation.)
 \* The protection sheet is on the display to protect against scratch. Remove it before use.

#### 3. INFORMATION button:

- Displays the indoor temperature and humidity and the outdoor temperature. (page 16.)
- 4. COUNTDOWN OFF TIMER button:
- Sets time to stop. (page 12.)

### 5. ON/OFF button: Stops operation selected

• Stops operation selected with the direct operation button. Another press will restart the same operation.

#### 6. Direct operation button:

- AUTO button (page 9.)
- "URURU" HUMIDIFYING button (page 8.)
- HEATING button (page 8.)
- "SARARA" DRYING button (page 7.)
  COOLING button (page 7.)
- 7. POWERFUL button:
- Makes cooling or heating more powerful. (Canceled in 20 minutes.) (page 13.)
- 8. TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons:
  It changes the temperature setting.
- It changes the temperature s
   9. HUMIDITY buttons:
- It changes the humidity setting.
- 10. FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING /
  - FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION button:Cleans the room air. (page 11.)
- 11. AIRFLOW DIRECTION / AIRFLOW RATE / COMFORT AIRFLOW / COOLING BREEZE button:
- Adjusts air direction and volume. (page 10.) **12. MOISTURIZING button:**
- Keeps humidity high to moisturizes your skin. (page 9.)
- 13. HOME LEAVE VENTILATION button:
  - Ventilates the room during home leaving.
- 14. SET UP button:
  - Sets the unit operation and remote controller display according to your preference. (page 14.)
- 15. TIMER SELECT button
- 16. TIMER Setting button:
- Sets the time for timer-on or timer-off. (page 12.)

  17. CLOCK button:
- Sets the present time. (page 6.)
- 18. MOLD SHOCK OUT button:
- Continuously runs the dehumidifying operation to keep the room air dry and clean. (page 16.)
- 19. MOLD PROOF button:
  - Dries the inside of the unit to prevent mold and odor growth. (page 15.)
- 20. COMFORT SLEEP button:
- Controls the room temperature to support comfort sleep and pleasant wake-up. (page 13.)
- 21. RESET button:
- Cleaning indicator reset. (page 17.)
- 22. CANCEL button

# 3.3 Preparation before Operation

# **Preparation Before Operation**

### To set the batteries

- 1. Press 🚃 with a finger and slide the cover to take it off.
- 2. Set two dry batteries (AAA).
- 3. Set the cover as before.
- Characters on the display will blink. Set the present time. (page 6.)

#### How to use

- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit will not operate.
- The maximum distance for communication is about 7m.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet. (Damage to LCD may occur.)

### ■ To fix the remote controller holder on the wall

- 1. Choose a place from where the signals reach the unit.
- 2. Fix the remote controller holder to a wall or pillar using the included screws.
- 3. Hook the holes on back of the remote controller to the protruding tabs on the remote controller holder.

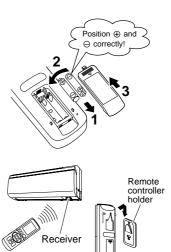
### Attach the Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, deodorizing filter for streamer, and air supply filter (page 20, 23.)

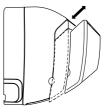
#### Turn on the power breaker

• Turning on the power breaker will cause the front panel and horizontal louver to open once and then close again. (This is a normal procedure.)

#### – 🕂 CAUTION

During operation (i.e. when the panel is open or being opened or closed), do not touch the panel with your hands.





#### ATTENTION

• Wrap the terminals with tape to insulate them before discarding batteries. Mixing with other metals or batteries may cause heat, explosion or fire.

#### PRECAUTION

- About batteries
  - The included batteries are provided to be used at first. Depending on when the air conditioner was manufactured, these batteries may run out in less than a year.
  - We recommend replacing once a year, although if the remote controller display begins to fade or if reception deteriorates, please replace with new alkaline batteries.
  - When replacing the batteries, use batteries of the same type, and replace the two old batteries together.
  - Batteries close to their expiration dates will have to be replaced sooner.
  - To prevent breakage or injury due to leaking or explosion, remove the batteries if the unit is not used for a long period of time.
- About remote controller
- Signal communication may be disabled if an electronic-starter-type fluorescent lamp (such as inverter-type lamps) is in the room. Consult the shop if that is the case.
- If the remote controller signals happen to operate another appliance, move that appliance to somewhere else, or consult the shop.
  Direct sunlight on the transmitter/receiver may cause the unit to work harder.

( MO.

FRESH

€Ð

MOLD≶

MOLD

C-SLEE

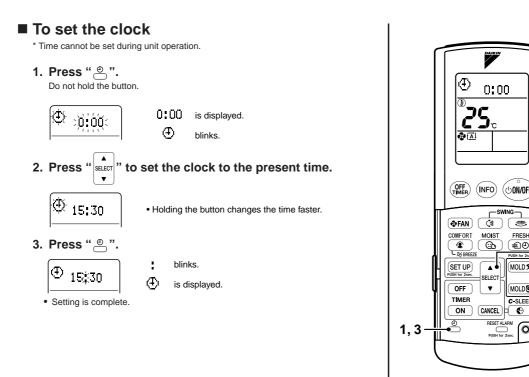
(0

Recommended temperature setting

For cooling :  $26^{\circ}C - 28^{\circ}C$ For heating :  $20^{\circ}C - 22^{\circ}C$ 

RESET ALARM

2



#### **ATTENTION**

If other messages than time appear on the display with the step 1 operation, do not operate the button for about 60 seconds. The display will return to normal

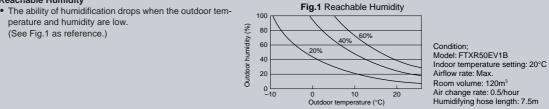
- Tips for saving energy
  - · Be careful not to cool (heat) the room too much.
  - Keeping the temperature setting at a moderate level helps save energy.
  - · Cover windows with a blind or a curtain.
  - Blocking sunlight and air from outdoors increases the cooling (heating) effect.
  - Clogged air filters cause inefficient operation and waste energy. Periodically clean the filter.
- Please note
  - The air conditioner consumes power even when it is not operating.
  - If you are not going to use the air conditioner for a long period, for example in spring or autumn, turn the breaker OFF.
  - When the outdoor temperature is below -15°C, turn on the breaker more than 1 hour before starting the operation.
  - (This is to warm up the compressor.)

#### Operating conditions

• Running the unit under conditions not listed below may cause the safety device to activate, stopping the unit. Also, condensation may form on the indoor unit and drip. (DRY / COOLING operation)

| COOLING | Outdoor temperature : 21 to 43°C<br>Indoor temperature : 18 to 32°C<br>Indoor humidity : 80% max. | HEATING     | Outdoor temperature : -20 to 24°C<br>Indoor temperature : 10 to 30°C<br>Indoor humidity : 70% max. |
|---------|---|-------------|--|
| DRY     | Outdoor temperature : 10 to 42°C<br>Indoor temperature : 18 to 30°C<br>Indoor humidity : 80% max. | HUMIDIFYING | Outdoor temperature : -10 to 24°C<br>Indoor temperature : 12 to 30°C<br>Indoor humidity : 70% max. |

#### Reachable Humidity



# 3.4 Cooling · "SARARA" DRYING Operation COOLING · "SARARA" DRYING Operation

#### COOLING operation • To lower temperature COOLING 1. Press " MULTI-MONITOR ON/OFF Green • To lower temperature and humidity (DRY 2. Press " ним MULTHMONITOR COOLING Ť ON/OFP • Yellow \* It is recommended to switch to COOLING operation if you want to lower temperature preferentially during DRY COOLING operation. "SARARA" DRYING operation To lower humidity DRYING 3. Press "(DRY)". MULTI-MONITOR Yellow To change the airflow direction and airflow rate (page 10.) • The airflow rate is set to "AUTO" during DRY COOLING or "SARARA" DRYING operation. Airflow rate cannot be changed. To stop operation 4. Press "(00)/0FF)". The multi-colored indicator of the unit will go off.

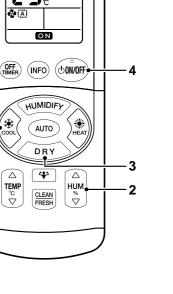
#### To change the temperature or humidity setting

|                      | COOLING | DRY COOLING   | DRY  |
|----------------------|---------|---|--|
| ⊂<br>TEMP<br>°°<br>▽ |         | 18°C – 32°C   | −3°C − STD   |
|                      | OFF ₹   | $\stackrel{{}_\sim}{\to}$ HIGH $\stackrel{{}_\sim}{\to}$ STD $\stackrel{{}_\sim}{\to}$ LOW $\stackrel{{}_\sim}{\to}$ CONT | $HIGH \rightleftarrows STD \rightleftarrows LOW \rightleftarrows CONT$ |
|                      | Green   | Yel   | low  |

#### NOTE

- Note on ON / OFF button
- Pressing "(())" will start the same operation as the last time.
- Note on COOLING operation
- This air conditioner cools the room by blowing the hot air in the room outside, so if the outside temperature is high, performance drops.
- Note on DRY COOLING
  - Pressing the humidity button down in COOLING mode set the unit to DRY COOLING.
  - Removes more humidity than the normal COOLING operation. It is recommended, however, to set temperature slightly lower than the room temperature to lower humidity because this operation mode does not heat air supplementary.
- Note on "SARARA" DRYING operation
  - Removes humidity with less lowering of the room temperature by heating air supplementary.
  - The operation mode change from COOLING to "SARARA" DRYING may raise humidity temporarily.

7



7

<u>COOLING</u> D\_\_\_**D**\_\_

### 3.5 Heating · "URURU" HUMIDIFYING Operation

# HEATING - "URURU" HUMIDIFYING Operation

MULTI-MONITOR

C Orange

ON/OFF

#### HEATING operation • To raise temperature **HEATING** 1. Press ") MULTI-MONITOR ON/OFF • ີ]: Red To raise temperature and humidity HŪM ▽ HUMID HEATING 2. Press " MULTI-MONITOF ON/OFF Orange "URURU" HUMIDIFYING operation • To raise humidity

■ To change the airflow direction and airflow rate (page 10.)

### ■ To stop operation

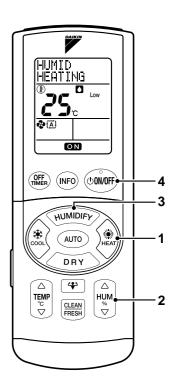
3. Press "(HUMIDIFY)". (HUMIDIFY

4. Press "(00N/OFF)".

The multi-colored indicator of the unit will go off.

#### To change the temperature or humidity setting

|   | -       | -                        |   |
|---|---------|--------------------------|---|
| [ | HEATING | HUMID HEATING            | HUMIDIFYING   |
|   |         | 10°C – 30°C              |   |
|   | OFF ₹   | ≚LOW ≓ STD ≓ HIGH ≓ CONT | $LOW \mathbin{\overrightarrow{\leftarrow}} STD \mathbin{\overrightarrow{\leftarrow}} HIGH \mathbin{\overrightarrow{\leftarrow}} CONT$ |
|   | Red     | Or                       | ange  |



#### NOTE

#### Note on HEATING operation

- Since this air conditioner heats the room by taking heat from outdoor air to indoors, the HEATING capacity becomes smaller in lower outdoor temperatures. If the HEATING effect is insufficient, it is recommended to use another HEATING appliance in combination with the air conditioner.
- The heat pump system heats the room by circulating hot air around all parts of the room. After the start of HEATING operation, it takes some time before the room gets warmer.
- In HEATING operation, frost may occur on the outdoor unit and lower the HEATING capacity. In that case, the system switches into defrosting operation to take away the frost.
- During defrosting operation, hot air does not flow out of indoor unit.
- Note on HUMID HEATING and "URURU" HUMIDIFYING operation
  - The ability of the unit to humidify drops when the outdoor temperature and humidity are low, or when the set fan strength is low.
  - The operation noise is higher than in normal HEATING.
  - The outdoor noise or odor may be captured because the outdoor air is heated with the heater and resultant moisture is taken into the room for humidification.
  - The top of the outdoor unit may get warm during operation, but this is not a malfunction.
  - The operation noise may change depending on the outdoor temperature and humidity. (Water supply is not necessary because moisture from the outdoor air is taken into the room.)
- Note on "URURU" HUMIDIFYING operation
- Can adjust the room humidify only according to your preference.
- When the room temperature gets low, slight heating may be on to continue humidification

#### **AUTO / MOISTURIZING Operation** 3.6 **AUTO Operation** After pressing the AUTO button, the air conditioner will operate according to room conditions in an automatic mode 1. Press "(AUTO)". AUTO MULTHMONITOR • HEATING: Red COOLING: Green The color of the multi-colored indicator changes according to the actual operations. . When the AUTO button is pressed, the color according to the operation selected by the air conditioner will light up. To change the airflow direction and airflow rate (page 10.) To stop operation 2. Press "(00N/OFF)". The multi-colored indicator of the unit will go off. To change the temperature setting ⊂ M TEM P 18°C – 30°C ′́₩ cooi NOTE Note on AUTO operation • In AUTO operation, the system selects an appropriate operation mode (COOLING Δ or HEATING) based on the room temperature at the start of the operation. TEMP The system automatically reselects setting at a regular interval to bring the room °c ▽ temperature to user setting level. • If you do not like AUTO operation, you can manually select the operation mode and setting you like. **MOISTURIZING** Operation This mode moisturizes your skin. 1. Press " ( ) during operation. MOISTURE COOLING Ð [] MULTI-MONITOP ON/OFF C Yellow Green ⊡ MOISTURE ÐΠ MULTI-MONITOF HEATING ON/OFF Orange Green ⊡ · The airflow rate and airflow direction settings are changed to auto and COMFORT AIRFLOW MODE respectively. In MOISTURIZING operation, COOLING BREEZE mode cannot be selected. To change the temperature setting • The same changes as COOLING and HEATING are possible. (page 7, 8.) • Humidity and airflow rate cannot be changed. ■ To change the airflow direction (page 10.) • The recommended airflow direction is COMFORT AIRFLOW MODE, but it can be

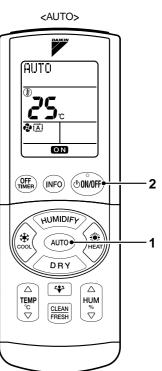
# changed. ■ To cancel the MOISTURIZING operation

#### 2. Press "( ) again.

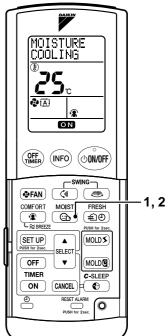
- The operation mode goes back to the previous one. The multi-colored indicator on the unit also goes back to the previous color.
- The MOISTURE lamp on the unit will go off.

#### NOTE

- Note on MOISTURIZING operation
  - The relative humidity is higher than in normal operation.
  - Can be used for COOLING, DRY COOLING, HEATING and HUMID HEATING.
  - The operation noise is slightly louder.

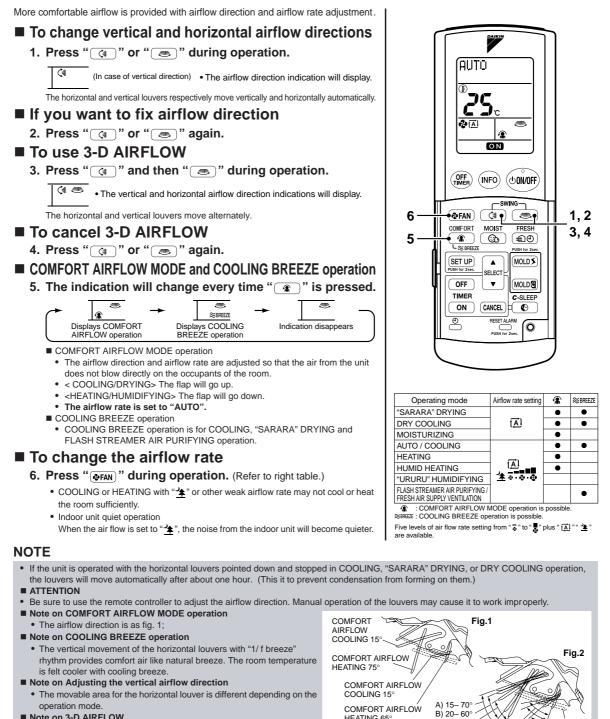


<MOISTURIZING>



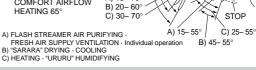
### 3.7 Adjusting Airflow Direction · Comfort Airflow Mode · **Cooling Breeze · Airflow Rate**

# **ADJUSTING AIRFLOW DIRECTION - COMFORT AIR-**FLOW MODE · COOLING BREEZE · AIRFLOW RATE



Note on 3-D AIRFLOW

Using 3-D AIRFLOW circulates cold air, which tends to be collected at the bottom of the room, and hot air, which tends to be collected near the ceiling, throughout the room, preventing areas of cold and hot from developing.



### FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING - FRESH AIR 3.8 **SUPPLY VENTILATION Operation / HOME LEAVE** VENTILATION

# FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING - FRESH **AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION Operation**

The absorption power of the Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter and air supply filter and the resolving power of the streamer discharge reduce bad odors and viruses, cleaning the room air.

1. Press "CLEAN FRESH ". (Can be used together with heating or cooling, or on its own.) • Changes every time the button is pressed. (Use instead of FAN operation.) 🛠 CLEAN **ON** 🛋 



air conditioner.)

■ To change the airflow direction and airflow rate (page 10.)

### ATTENTION

Temperature and humidity cannot be changed during FLASH STREAMER AIR PURI-FYING or FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION operation only.

#### NOTE

- Note on FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING operation
- The streamer discharge energy and Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter clean the air in the room.
- Note on FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION operation
  - Fresh air is taken from outdoor through the outdoor unit. • The outdoor noise and odor may be captured because the outdoor air is taken into
  - the room. The operation noise is slightly louder.
- · The operation noise may change depending on the outdoor temperature and humidity. What is streamer discharge?
  - It generates high-speed electron with high oxidizing power in the unit to resolve odor and harmful gas.
  - (It is safe because the high-speed electron is generated and goes away inside the unit.) The streamer discharge fizzes, but this is not a malfunction.

# HOME LEAVE VENTILATION

Ventilates the room during your absence to maintain it comfortable.

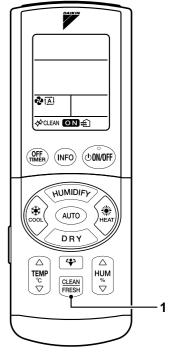
- 1. Press "(€). FRESH H4⊕⊷
  - Stops automatically after 4 hours • The default setting is 4 hours.
- To change the time to stop
  - 2. Press "())".
  - It can be set to between 1 and 9 hours, in 1-hour increments.
  - To use both HOME LEAVE VENTILATION and ON TIMER, set the ON TIMER first. (page 12.)
- To change the airflow direction (page 10.) Temperature, humidity and airflow rate cannot be changed.
- To cancel the HOME LEAVE VENTILATION
  - 3. Press "(CANCEL)".

### NOTE

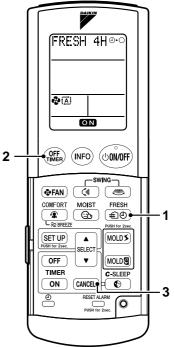
- Note on HOME LEAVE VENTILATION
- The FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION operation and COUNTDOWN OFF TIMER can be set with one button at the same time.

11

-FLASH STREAMER AIR PURIFYING / FRESH AIR SUPPLY VENTILATION>



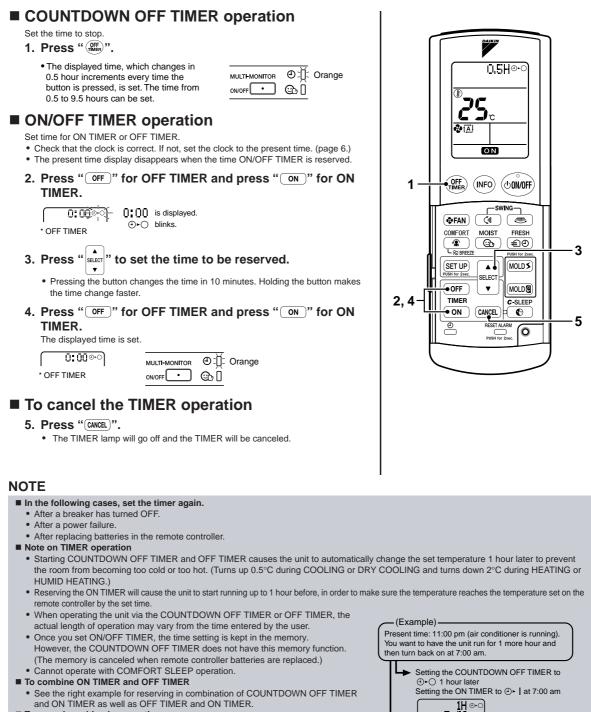
<HOME LEAVE VENTILATION>



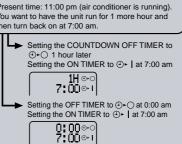
#### **TIMER Operation** 3.9

# **TIMER Operation**

Timer functions are useful for automatically switching the air conditioner on or off at night or in the morning. The timer operates only one time. Set the timer for each use.



- To cancel combined reservation
  - Press "ON" and then "CANCEL" to cancel the ON TIMER only.
  - Press " OFF " and then " CANCEL " to cancel the OFF TIMER only.
  - Press " ( ) several times to reach 9.5 hours and then press it one more time to cancel the COUNTDOWN OFF TIMER only.



2

1.3

#### 3.10 COMFORT SLEEP / POWERFUL Operation **COMFORT SLEEP Operation** Controlling the room temperature supports comfort sleep and pleasant wake-up • Check that the clock is correct. If not, set the clock to the present time. (page 6.) The present time display disappears when the COMFORT SLEEP operation is set. <COMFORT SLEEP> 1. Press " • during operation. C-SLEEP blinks. C-SLEEP 6:00 is displayed. C-SLEEF 6:00 2. Press " SELECT " to set the time to wake up. OF • Pressing the button changes the C-SLEEP-time in 10 minutes. Holding the '7:ÒO button makes the time change faster. 3. Press "🕑 (C-SLEEP C-SLEEP is displayed. 7:00 is displayed. When settings are made while the unit is not running, press " ( OWOFF)" to start the operation. (INFO) (OON/OFF To cancel the comfort sleep operation ( 🕸 FAN ) 4. Press "(CANCEL)". MOIST FRESH COMFORT 1 ා £0 **ATTENTION** ≋B Make the room temperature comfortable to some extent before sleep. ∎ SET UP (MOLD > ELEC HEATING ... .. 20°C – 25°C MOLD OFF ▼ \* Too low set temperature may cause you to get chilled while asleep. TIMER C-SLEEP NOTE ON CANCEL 🗗 🕑 🖣 ٩ ■ Note on COMFORT SLEEP operation 6 Δ Can be used for COOLING, DRY COOLING, MOISTURE COOLING, HEATING, HUMID HEATING and MOISTURE HEATING. · Cannot be used with TIMER operation ■ How to use COMFORT SLEEP operation effectively (For 6 hours of sleep) Starting COMFORT SLEEP operation lowers the set temperature by 2°C in 3 hours ON-O Set wakeup time and starts raising it by 1°C 1 hour before the 1C Wa set time, offering V-curve temperature con-<POWERFUL> -2C trol. (See the right figure.) · Set the airflow direction so that the air from the unit 1hou does not directly blow on the occupants of the room. POWERFUL **POWERFUL** Operation COOLING POWERFUL operation quickly maximizes the cooling (heating) effect in any operation mode. 1. Press " ( ) during operation. • POWERFUL operation ends in 20 minutes 4 ON (POWE:RFUL POWERFUL MULTI-MONITOR MULTI-MONITOR COOLING HEATING ON/OFF Green ON/OFP • CRed (OON/OFF (INFO) ■ To change the airflow direction (page 10.) • Temperature, humidity and airflow rate cannot be changed. HUMIDIFY To cancel POWERFUL operation \* cool ) НЕА AUTO 2. Press " 😵 " again. • The operation mode goes back to the previous one. The multi-colored indicator DRY on the unit also goes back to the previous color. NOTE 4 $\triangle$ $\bigtriangleup$ TEMF ним Note on POWERFUL operation CLEAN FRESH $\nabla$ $\nabla$ Can be used for COOLING, DRY COOLING, HEATING, HUMID HEATING and MOISTURE HEATING. (Cannot be used while the unit is not running.) Pressing " Turing COOLING, DRY COOLING or MOISTURE COOLING changes the operation mode to POWERFUL COOLING. Pressing " To during HEATING, HUMID HEATING or MOISTURE HEATING changes the operation mode to POWERFUL HEATING

The operation noise is slightly louder during POWERFUL operation.

13

1.2

# 3.11 SET UP

# SET UP

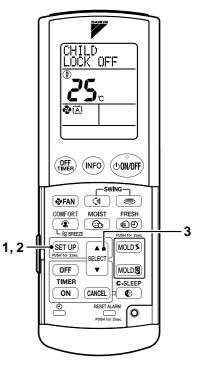
Sets the unit operation and remote controller display according to your preference.

- 1. Hold "SETUP" for about 2 seconds.
  - The setup mode will be activated.
- 2. The item will change every time "SETUP" is pressed.
- 3. The settings will change every time " $\begin{bmatrix} \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \end{bmatrix}$ " is pressed respectively.
  - Direct the remote controller toward the main unit to make settings.

|   |                 | is default.   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| Item  | Setting         | Description   |
| CHILD PROOF LOCK<br>ON/OFF  | OFF ◀ ► ON      | <ul> <li>Restricts the remote controller operations<br/>to avoid misuse by children. (See NOTE.)</li> </ul>   |
| MOLD PROOF<br>ON/OFF  | OFF <b>I</b> ON | <ul> <li>If the unit is set to "MOLD PROOF ON", it<br/>may automatically enter MOLD PROOF<br/>operation mode after operating in DRVING,<br/>DRY COOLING or COOLING operation<br/>mode, depending on the amount of time it<br/>had been operating. This is to dry out the<br/>interior of the air conditioner. (page 15.)</li> </ul> |
| MONITOR BRIGHTNESS  |                 | Changes the brightness of the indoor unit<br>display.   |
| BEEP volume   |                 | Sets the receiving tone volume.   |
| CONTRAST Setting  | 1 ◀▶ 6 ◀▶ 16    | <ul> <li>Sets the grayscale for the remote controller<br/>LCD.</li> <li>Selectable from contrast 1 to 16.</li> </ul>  |
| Setting complete The display on the remote control goes back to normal if no setting is |                 |   |

ng complete : The display

The display on the remote control goes back to normal if no setting is made for 10 seconds.



### NOTE

#### ■ Note on CHILD PROOF LOCK

Selecting "ON" while CHILD PROOF LOCK setting and then pressing "(SETUP)" or making no setting for 10 seconds will cause the CHILD
 PROOF LOCK to be enabled and the display to show "CHILD - ".

- The button operations other than "(SETUP)" are disabled in CHILD PROOF LOCK mode.
- To cancel the CHILD PROOF LOCK, set to "OFF" following the above steps from 1 to 3.

# 3.12 MOLD PROOF Operation

# **MOLD PROOF Operation**

Dries the inside of the unit to prevent mold and odors.

#### ■ Auto operation (approximately once every 2 weeks) If the unit is set to "MOLD PROOF ON", the MOLD PROOF operation will start automatically after the unit has been run in "SARARA" DRYING or COOLING mode, depending on the amount of time the unit has been run (approximately once every 2 weeks). (page 14.) The default is set to "MOLD PROOF OFF".

### Manual operation

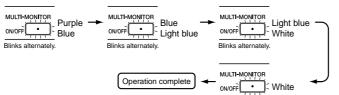
1. Hold "MOLDE" for about 2 seconds while the unit is not running.



The MOLD PROOF operation will start. The display will return to normal.

- The front panel and horizontal louver will open.
- The MOLD PROOF operation runs for about 3 hours, changing the color of the multi-colored indicator lamp of the unit.

#### <Color of multi-colored indicator lamp>



If you want to stop MOLD PROOF operation during operation

- 2. Hold "MOLDE" (again) for about 2 seconds.
  - The front panel and horizontal louver will close.
  - The multi-colored indicator of the unit will go off.

#### MOLD PROOF (INFO) (OON/OFF -SWING ٢ • FAN (1) Mr. COMFORT MOIST FRESH \* **B €**0 L≋BRE (SET UP) MOLD≯ ۸ SELECT OFF MOLD 1.2 ▼ TIMER C-SLEEP CANCEL C ON Ð (0

(In case of manual operation)

#### NOTE

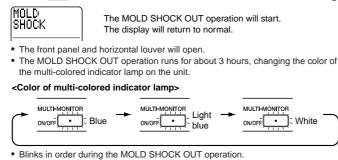
- Note on MOLD PROOF operation
  - Dries out the interior of the air conditioner using FAN and HEATING operation mode to exhaust humidity to the outdoor. This prevents mold and odor growth. This function is not designed to remove existing dust or mold.
  - During MOLD PROOF operation, the room temperature may rise and humidity from the machine may be sent into the room. Some odors may be noticed, too.
  - The mode may not be used if the outside temperature or humidity is very high.
  - The exhausting operation may not be run depending on the outdoor temperature.
  - MOLD PROOF operation mode is not available if the unit is shut off using the COUNTDOWN OFF TIMER. MOLD PROOF operation mode only comes on automatically if the unit has been stopped using the operation/stop switch on the remote controller or the main unit.
  - If MOLD PROOF operation is stopped during AUTO mode, the operation comes on automatically next time, depending on the amount of time the unit had been operating. To cancel the AUTO mode, set to "MOLD PROOF OFF". (page 14.)

# 3.13 MOLD SHOCK Operation / INFORMATION DISPLAY

# **MOLD SHOCK OUT Operation**

This mode dehumidifies the air in the room and prevents mold growth. Continuous drying operation lowers the room humidity rapidly.

1. Hold "(MOLDS)" for about 2 seconds while the unit is not running.



### If you want to stop MOLD SHOCK OUT operation during operation

- 2. Hold "MOLDS" (again) for about 2 seconds.
  - The front panel and horizontal louver will close.The multi-colored indicator of the unit will go off.

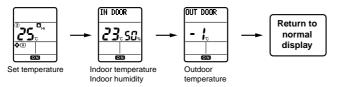
#### NOTE

- Note on MOLD SHOCK OUT operation
  - The mode may not be used depending on the outdoor temperature.
  - <Operating range> Outdoor temperature of from 12 to 40°C
- Temperature and humidity may not satisfy your preference during MOLD SHOCK
- OUT operation. Run this operation mode while no one is in the room. It is generally said that mold growth can be reduced when the humidity is below 60%

# INFORMATION DISPLAY

Displays the room temperature and humidity and outdoor temperature.

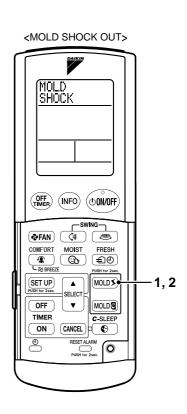
- 1. Press " (INFO)".
  - After pressing " (INFO) ", point the remote controller at the air conditioner unit for 2 seconds.



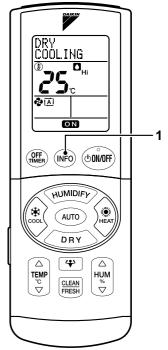
#### ■ The display changes every time "(NFO)" is pressed. NOTE

#### Note on INFORMATION DISPLAY

- The signal from the air conditioner is not being received properly if "Reception Failed" is displayed when you press " (NFO)". Repeat, aiming the remote controller at the air conditioner.
- During operation, the outdoor temperature may sometimes be displayed higher than it actually is in COOLING or "SARARA" DRYING mode or lower in HEATING mode (especially if frost has accumulated on the outdoor unit), due to the effects of the air blown from the outdoor unit or the temperature of the heat exchanger.
- The lowest indoor and outdoor temperature which can be displayed is -9°C. This will be displayed even if the actual temperature is lower. The highest temperature is 39°C. This will be displayed even if the actual temperature is higher.
- · The indoor and outdoor temperatures and the humidity which are displayed are those near the sensors attached to the main air conditioner unit.
- · The displayed temperature and humidity should only be taken as approximations, as they may be affected if there are objects around the sensors or due to direct sunlight, depending on where the air conditioner is installed.



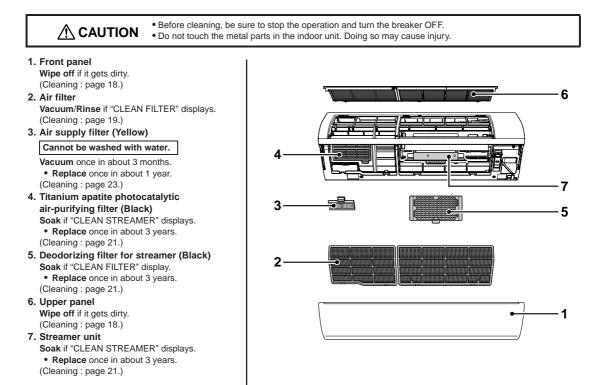
<INFORMATION DISPLAY>



# 3.14 Care and Cleaning

# **Care and Cleaning**

### Quick reference for cleaning



### To reset the filter cleaning indicator

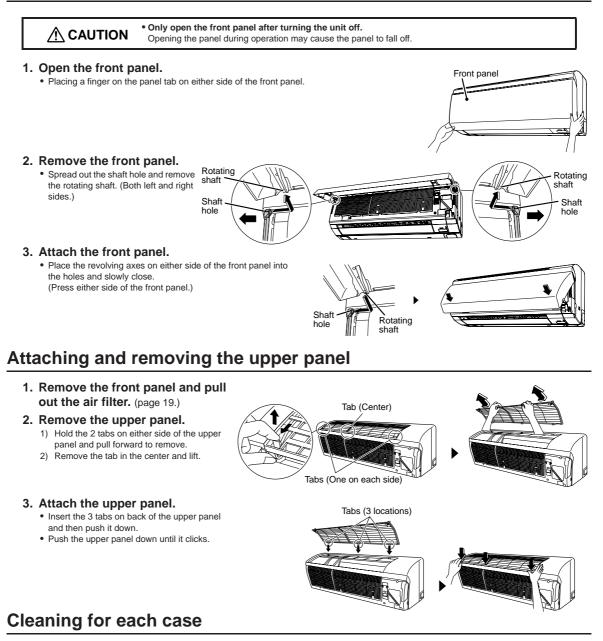
While the unit is not operating, the filter cleaning indicator may be displayed on the remote controller depending the amount of time the unit had been operating. This sign indicates the cleaning timing for the air filter, Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, deodorizing filter for streamer or streamer unit.

- Clean Filter Streamer
- After cleaning, press " """"" " for about 2 seconds directing the remote controller toward the main unit with powered on.
   Indication disappears.

#### NOTE

- "CLEAN FILTER" sign will appear after about 340 hours of operation.
- "CLEAN STREAMER" sign will appear after about 1800 hours of operation.
- Operating the unit without cleaning with the "CLEAN STREAMER" sign displayed will lower the deodorizing capability.
- Periodical cleaning leads to energy saving.

### Attaching and removing the front panel



- Wipe it with a soft cloth soaked in water. (Only neutral detergent may be used.)
- In case of washing the front panel with water, dry it with cloth, dry it up in the shade after washing.

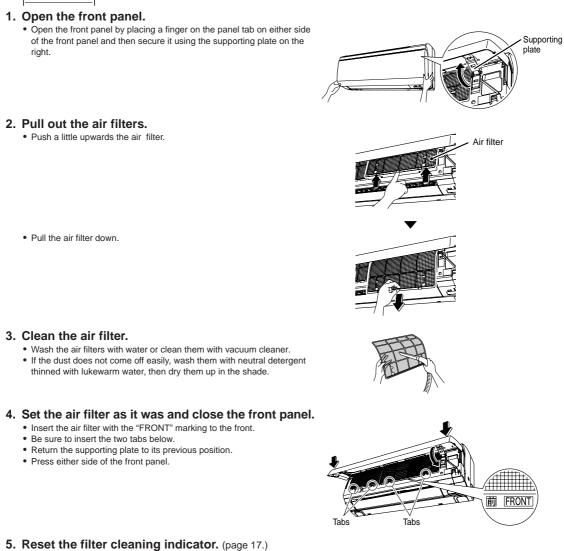
- When removing or attaching the front panel, use a robust and stable stool and watch your steps carefully.
- When removing or attaching the front panel, support the front panel securely with hand to prevent it from falling.
- For cleaning, do not use hot water above 40°C, benzine, gasoline, thinner, nor other volatile oils, polishing compound, scrubbing brushes, nor other hand stuff.
- After cleaning, make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.
- Wipe the front panel with a soft cloth. Wiping with a hard cloth may scratch it.

# **Care and Cleaning**

### Cleaning the air filter



is displayed on the remote controller)

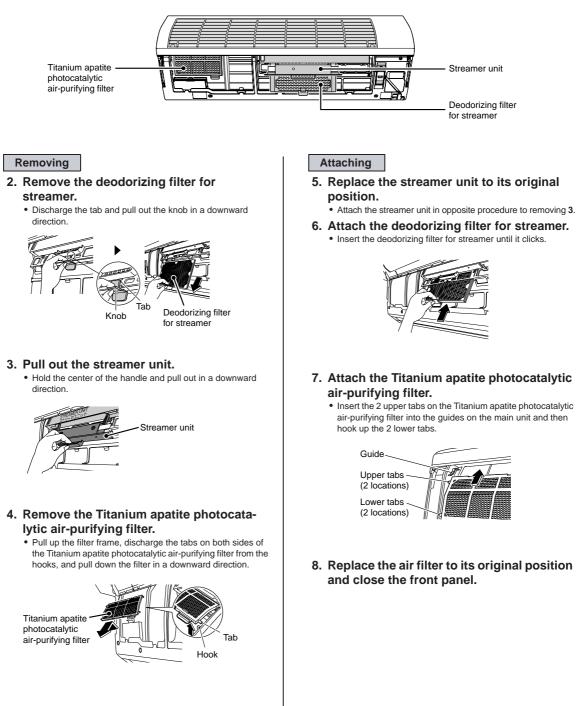


#### ATTENTION

• Using without cleaning will lower the COOLING or HEATING capability, wasting electricity.

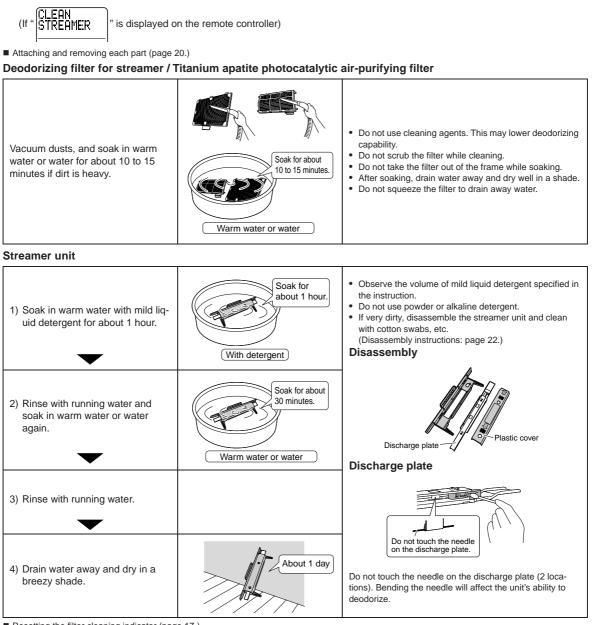
# Attaching and removing the deodorizing filter for streamer, Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, streamer unit

1. Open the front panel and pull out the air filter. (page 19.)



# **Care and Cleaning**

### Cleaning the deodorizing filter for streamer, Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter and streamer unit

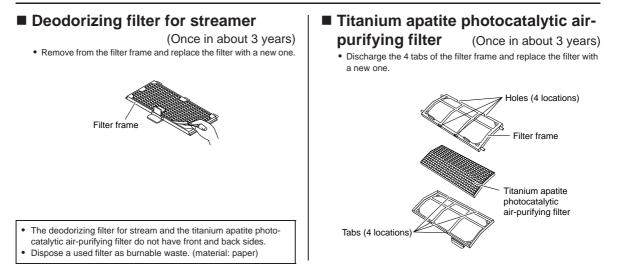


Resetting the filter cleaning indicator (page 17.)

#### **ATTENTION**

• Using without cleaning lowers the deodorizing capability.

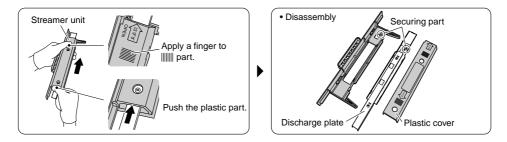
### How to replace



### How to disassemble and assemble the streamer unit

Before disposing the streamer unit, disassemble it.

- How to disassemble
- Use gloves for safety.
- Apply one hand to **minim** part and push the plastic part with another hand.
- Disassemble the streamer unit into the plastic cover and the discharge plate.
- Match up the securing parts of the various parts of the streamer unit and assemble as it was.



#### **A**CAUTION

• Be careful not to cut yourself when disassembling and assembling the streamer unit.

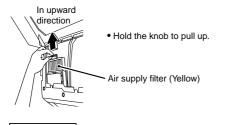
# **Care and Cleaning**

### Attaching, cleaning and replacing the air supply filter

(Clean once in about 3 months and replace once in about 1 year.)

#### Cannot be washed with water.

- 1. Open the front panel to pull out the air filter and Titanium apatite photocatalytic airpurifying filter. (page 19, 20.)
- 2. Pull out the air supply filter.

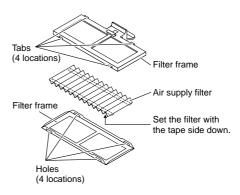


- 3. Cleaning
  - Remove dust with a vacuum cleaner.
  - The component of the filter is weak in water. Do not rinse the filter.

#### Replacing

Discharge the 4 tabs of the filter frame and replace the filter with a new one.

 Dispose a used filter as unburnable waste. (material: polyester)



- 4. Replace the air supply filter to its original position.
- 5. Set the Titanium apatite photocatalytic airpurifying filter and the air filter as they were and close the front panel. (page 19, 20.)

### 

• Do not forget to replace the filter to its original position after cleaning it. Operating the unit in HUMIDIFYING mode without attaching the filter may cause condensation to form inside the panel or others, causing water to leak.

### Cleaning the indoor unit and the remote controller

For cleaning, do not use hot water above 40°C, benzine, gasoline, thinner, nor other volatile oils, polishing compound, scrubbing brushes, nor other hand stuff.

<sup>•</sup> Wipe with a soft dry cloth.

#### NOTE

The deodorizing filter for stream and the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter should be cleaned regularly. We recommend replacing the filter in the following situations.

- If it is damaged during cleaning because it is made of paper.
- If it is very dirty after long use

|                                       | Item                     | Part No.   |  |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
|                                       | Air purifying filter set | KAF974B42S |  |
| Air supply filter (with frame) KAF963 |                          | KAF963A43  |  |
|                                       |                          |            |  |

To order Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, deodorizing filter for streamer, air supply filter and streamer unit contact to the service shop there you bought the air conditioner.

Using the dirty parts will:

• Prevent proper air purification.

Prevent proper deodorizing.

- Reduce COOLING and HEATING capacity.
- Cause the unit to produce foul odors

#### Check

- Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.
- Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.
- Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOLING or DRY operation.
- If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit.
- Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.
- Is the earth wire out or disconnected in the middle?
   An incomplete ground wire may cause electrical shock. Contact the service shop.

# Before a long idle period 1. Operate the "MOLD PROOF" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside. MOLD PROOF operation Hold "WOLD" for about 2 seconds while the unit is not running. MOLD PROOF operation will stop in about 3 hours. 2. After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner. 3. Clean the air filters and set them again. 4. Take out batteries from the remote controller.

# 3.15 Troubleshooting

# **Trouble Shooting**

### ■ These cases are not troubles.

The following cases are not air conditioner troubles but have some reasons. You may just continue using it.

| Case  | Explanation  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| <ul> <li>Operation does not start soon.</li> <li>When ON/OFF button was pressed soon after operation was stopped.</li> <li>When the mode was reselected.</li> </ul> | This is to protect the air conditioner.<br>You should wait for about 3 minutes.  |  |  |
| Hot air does not flow out soon after the start of heating operation.  | The air conditioner is warming up.<br>You should wait for 1 to 4 minutes.  |  |  |
| Makes a noise.  | <ul> <li>Clicking sound can be heard either when the unit is running or stopped</li> <li>This is either the sound of the valves regulating the refrigerant or the electrical parts working.</li> <li>Sound of running water</li> <li>Refrigerant is flowing through the air conditioner.</li> <li>Blowing sound</li> <li>The flow of refrigerant through the air conditioner is switching.</li> <li>Creaking sound</li> <li>The air conditioner itself is expanding or shrinking due to a change in the humidity.</li> <li>Clopping sound</li> <li>Can be heard coming from inside the air conditioner when the ventilator is on and the room is shut. Open a window or turn off the ventilator.</li> <li>Clicking sound can be heard either when the unit is running or stopped</li> <li>This is the sound of the electrical parts working when the front panel opens or closes.</li> <li>Blowing, cracky or burning sound</li> <li>This is the sound of streamer discharging.</li> </ul> |  |  |
| Fizzes during HUMIDIFYING or<br>VENTILATING operation.  | <ul> <li>This is the sound of humidified or ventilated air being discharged.</li> <li>The operation noise may change depending on the outdoor temperature and humidity.</li> </ul>   |  |  |
| Makes a sound during HUMIDIFYING operation.   | <ul> <li>Operation noise changes</li> <li>This is because the fan for humidification moves or stops.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| The indoor unit makes a noise even after HUMIDIFYING operation is stopped.  | • The fan for humidification rotates for about 3 minutes after the operation stops for product pro-<br>tection.  |  |  |
| Units stops during HEATING and the sound of running water can be heard.   | • The frost on the outdoor unit is being removed. You should wait for about 3 to 10 minutes.   |  |  |
| The outdoor unit emits water or steam.  | <ul> <li>In HEATING operation</li> <li>The frost on the outdoor unit melts into water or steam when the air conditioner is in defrost operat</li> <li>In COOLING operation</li> <li>Moisture in the air condenses into water on the cool surface of outdoor unit piping and dri</li> </ul>   |  |  |
| Mist comes out of the indoor unit.  | <ul> <li>This happens when the air in the room is cooled into mist by the cold air flow during COOLING operation.</li> <li>This is because moisture on the heat exchanger evaporates when "SARARA" DRYING operation is run after COOLING or DRY COOLING operation.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| The indoor unit gives out odor.   | <ul> <li>This happens when smells of the room, furniture, or cigarettes are absorbed into the unit and discharged with the air flow.</li> <li>(If this happens, we recommend you to have the indoor unit washed by a technician. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.)</li> <li>The outdoor odor may be captured. Stop the "URURU" HUMIDIFYING operation to eliminate the cause of odor.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| Cold air blows at the start of "SARARA" DRYING operation.   | This is because the air conditioner is not warmed up.  |  |  |
| The outdoor fan rotates while the air con-<br>ditioner is not in operation.   | <ul> <li>After operation is stopped:</li> <li>The outdoor fan continues rotating for another 60 seconds for system protection.</li> <li>While the air conditioner is not in operation:</li> <li>When the outdoor temperature is very high, the outdoor fan starts rotating for system protection.</li> </ul>   |  |  |
| The operation stopped suddenly.<br>(Multi-colored indicator lamp is on.)  | • For system protection, the air conditioner may stop operating on a sudden large voltage fluctu-<br>ation. It automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes.   |  |  |
| Unit stops suddenly (when in ON TIMER mode).  | <ul> <li>Reserving the on timer will cause the unit to start running up 1 hour before, in order to make sure the temperature reaches the temperature set on the remote controller by the set time. Using the remote controller during this time (other than the operation/stop button) will stop the unit. Restart the unit with the remote controller.</li> </ul>   |  |  |
| Unit operates even though the multi-<br>colored indicator lamp is off.  | • The multi-colored indicator lamp will go off if "Monitor OFF" is set using the remote controller.  |  |  |
| Unit continues to operate even after<br>"SARARA" DRYING, DRY COOLING or<br>COOLING operation is stopped.  | The MOLD PROOF operation will start. (If you don't want it, set to "MOLD PROOF OFF" using the remote controller. (page 15.))   |  |  |
| Room lamp flickers during HUMIDIFYING operation.  | It might happen the flickers of lighting in the case of insufficient power supply.   |  |  |

• Check again. Please check again before calling a repair person.

| Case  | Check   |  |
|---|---|--|
| The air conditioner does not operate.<br>(Multi-colored indicator lamp is off.)   | <ul> <li>Hasn't a breaker turned OFF or a fuse blown?</li> <li>Isn't it a power failure?</li> <li>Are batteries set in the remote controller?</li> <li>Is the timer setting correct?</li> </ul>   |  |
| The air conditioner does not operate.<br>(Multi-colored indicator lamp flashes.)  | <ul> <li>Turn off the breaker and then start the unit using the remote controller.</li> <li>If the lamp still flashes, consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.<br/>Turn off the breaker.</li> </ul>  |  |
| Operation stops suddenly.<br>(Multi-colored indicator lamp flashes.)  | <ul> <li>Are the air filters clean?</li> <li>Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units?<br/>Clean the air filters or take all obstacles away and turn the breaker OFF. Then turn it ON again<br/>and try operating the air conditioner with the remote controller. If the lamp still flashes, con-<br/>sult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.<br/>Turn off the breaker.</li> </ul>  |  |
| Cooling (Heating) effect is poor.   | <ul> <li>Are the air filters clean?</li> <li>Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units?</li> <li>Is the temperature setting appropriate?</li> <li>Are the windows and doors closed?</li> <li>Are the air flow rate and the air direction set appropriately?</li> <li>Is the ventilator fan spinning?</li> </ul>  |  |
| An abnormal functioning happens during operation.   | <ul> <li>Do you put your hand in the main unit while it is operating? (Do you touch inside the unit?)</li> <li>Putting your hand (or touching) inside the unit may cause malfunctions due to static discharge.<br/>Do not put your hand in the main unit.</li> <li>The air conditioner may malfunction with lightning or radio waves. Turn the breaker OFF, turn it ON again and try operating the air conditioner with the remote controller.</li> </ul> |  |
| <ul> <li>Front panel does not open.</li> <li>(Multi-colored indicator lamp flashes.)</li> <li>Is there something caught in the front panel?<br/>Remove the object and attempt operation again using the remote controller.<br/>If the panel still does not open, contact your dealer if the operation lamp is still flashing</li> </ul> |   |  |
| The multi-colored indicator lamp flashes<br>for a certain amount of time (about 2 min-<br>utes) at the start of or during FLASH<br>STREAMER AIR PURIFYING operation.  | <ul> <li>Is the streamer unit installed securely?</li> <li>Turn off the breaker, check to see if the streamer unit is installed securely, turn the power on, and then operate the unit again using the remote controller.</li> <li>If the lamp still flashes, consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.</li> </ul>   |  |

# **Trouble Shooting**

■ Call the service shop immediately.

### 🔨 WARNING

- When an abnormality (such as a burning smell) occurs, stop operation and turn the breaker OFF. Continued operation in an abnormal condition may result in troubles, electric shocks or fire. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- Do not attempt to repair or modify the air conditioner by yourself.
   Incorrect work may result in electric shocks or fire.
  - Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- If the air conditioner does not cool (or heat), leaking refrigerant is a possible cause, so please contact your dealer. Please talk to a service repairman about any repairs needed when adding refrigerant.

Refrigerant used for the air conditioner is safe. Refrigerant does not leak usually, but if it leaks into the room and comes in contact with any kind of flame, including those in fan heaters, gas stoves, gas heaters, etc., toxic gas may be generated.

#### If one of the following symptoms takes place, call the service shop immediately.



- An abnormal sound is heard during operation.
- An object or water got into the unit.
- The safety breaker, a fuse, or the earth leakage breaker cuts off the operation frequently.
   A switch or a button often fails to work properly.
- There is a burning smell.
- Water leaks from the indoor unit.
- Cool or warm air comes from the unit but the multi-colored indicator lamp blinks for a certain amount of time (about 2 minutes) at the start of or during operation.



This indicates the malfunction or initial failure of the humidifying unit or some sensors. The unit is operating in COOLING / HEATING mode as a temporary operation. Contact your dealer.

#### After a power failure

- The air conditioner automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes. You should just wait for a while.
- MOLD SHOCK OUT mode, MOLD PROOF mode and COMFORT SLEEP mode will be canceled. Re-set.

#### Lightning

If lightning may strike the neighbouring area, stop operation and turn the breaker OFF for system protection.

#### **Disposal requirements**



Your air conditioning product is marked with this symbol. This means that electrical and electronic products shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.

Do not try to dismantle the system yourself: the dismantling of the air conditioning system, treatment of the refrigerant, of oil and of other parts must be done by a qualified installer in accordance with relevant local and national legislation.

Air conditioners must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use, recycling and recovery. By ensuring this product is disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health. Please contact the installer or local authority for more information.

Batteries must be removed from the remote controller and disposed of separately in accordance with relevant local and national legislation.

#### We recommend periodical maintenance.

In certain operating conditions, the inside of the air conditioner may get foul after several seasons of use, resulting in poor performance. It is recommended to have periodical maintenance by a specialist aside from regular cleaning by the user. For specialist maintenance, contact the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.

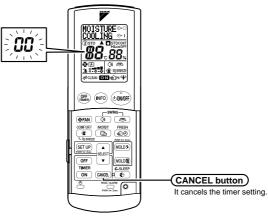
The maintenance cost must be born by the user.



#### ■ FAULT DIAGNOSIS BY REMOTE CONTROLLER

In the ARC447A1, the temperature display sections on the main unit indicate corresponding codes.

1. When the CANCEL button is held down for 5 seconds, a "00" indication flashes on the temperature display section.



#### 2. Press the CANCEL button repeatedly until a continuous beep is produced.

• The code indication changes as shown below, and notifies with a long beep.

|               | CODE | MEANING   |
|---------------|------|---|
|               | 00   | NORMAL  |
|               | UA   | INDOOR-OUTDOOR UNIT COMBINATION FAULT                             |
| SYSTEM        | U0   | REFRIGERANT SHORTAGE  |
| STOTEIN       | U2   | DROP VOLTAGE OR MAIN CIRCUIT OVERVOLTAGE                          |
|               | U4   | FAILURE OF TRANSMISSION (BETWEEN INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT)    |
|               | U7   | CIRCUIT BOARD TRANSMISSION FAULT                                  |
|               | AH   | STREAMER FAULT  |
|               | A1   | INDOOR PCB DEFECTIVENESS  |
|               | A5   | HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL OR FREEZE-UP PROTECTOR                      |
|               | A6   | FAN MOTOR FAULT   |
| INDOOR UNIT   | CC   | HUMIDITY SENSOR FAULT   |
|               | C4   | FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR                          |
|               | C7   | FRONT PANEL OPEN/CLOSE FAULT                                      |
|               | C9   | FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR                             |
|               | UA   | HOSE LENGTH NOT SET   |
|               | EA   | COOLING-HEATING SWITCHING FAULT                                   |
|               | E1   | CIRCUIT BOARD FAULT   |
|               | E5   | OL STARTED  |
|               | E6   | FAULTY COMPRESSOR START UP  |
|               | E7   | DC FAN MOTOR FAULT  |
|               | E8   | OVERCURRENT INPUT   |
|               | FA   | EJECTION PRESSURE FAULT   |
|               | F3   | HIGH TEMPERATURE DISCHARGE PIPE CONTROL                           |
|               | F6   | HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL (IN COOLING)                                |
|               | H0   | SENSOR FAULT  |
| OUTDOOR UNIT  | H1   | DAMPER FAULT  |
|               | H6   | OPERATION HALT DUE TO FAULTY POSITION DETECTION SENSOR            |
|               | H8   | CT ABNORMALITY  |
|               | H9   | FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR                             |
|               | J3   | FAULTY DISCHARGE PIPE TEMPERATURE SENSOR                          |
|               | J6   | FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR                          |
|               | L3   | ELECTRICAL PARTS HEAT FAULT                                       |
|               | L4   | HIGH TEMPERATURE AT INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK                     |
|               | L5   | OUTPUT OVERCURRENT  |
| -             | P4   | FAULTY INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK TEMPERATURE SENSOR               |
|               | PA   | HEATER LINE BROKEN FAULT  |
| HUMIDIFY UNIT | PH   | HUMIDIFYING FAN OUTLET THERMISTOR FAULT, HEATER TEMPERATURE FAULT |
|               | P9   | HUMIDIFYING FAN LOCK  |

#### NOTE

 A short beep and two consecutive beeps indicate non-corresponding codes.
 To cancel the code display, hold the CANCEL button down for 5 seconds. The code display also cancel itself if the button is not pressed for 1 minute.

28

3P177300-1

## Part 6 Service Diagnosis

| 1. | Convenient Service Check Function                                   | .137 |
|----|---|------|
| 2. | Troubleshooting   | .139 |
|    | 2.1 Error Code Indication by Remote Controller                      |      |
|    | 2.2 Air conditioner does not run.                                   |      |
|    | 2.3 Air conditioner runs but does not get cooling (heating)         | 143  |
|    | 2.4 When operation starts, safety breaker works.                    |      |
|    | 2.5 Air conditioner makes big noise and vibration                   |      |
|    | 2.6 Air does not humidified enough                                  |      |
|    | 2.7 Indoor Unit PCB Fault   |      |
|    | 2.8 Peak-cut Control or Freeze-up Protection                        |      |
|    | 2.9 Fan Motor System (DC Motor) Fault                               |      |
|    | 2.10 Streamer Unit Fault  |      |
|    | 2.11 Thermistor System Fault  |      |
|    | 2.12 Front Panel Open / Close Fault                                 |      |
|    | 2.13 Humidity Sensor Fault  |      |
|    | 2.14 Signal Transmission Error (Indoor Unit - Outdoor Unit)         |      |
|    | 2.15 Incompatible Power Supply between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit |      |
|    | 2.16 Incomplete Setting for Hose Length                             |      |
|    | 2.17 Outdoor Unit PCB Fault   |      |
|    | 2.18 OL Activation (Compressor Overload)                            |      |
|    | 2.19 Compressor Lock  |      |
|    | 2.20 DC Fan Lock  |      |
|    | 2.21 Input Over Current Detection                                   |      |
|    | 2.22 Four Way Valve Fault   |      |
|    | 2.23 Discharge Pipe Temperature Control                             |      |
|    | 2.24 High Pressure Control in Cooling                               |      |
|    | 2.25 Compressor Sensor System Fault                                 |      |
|    | 2.26 Damper Fault   |      |
|    | 2.27 Position Sensor Fault  |      |
|    | 2.28 DC Voltage / DC Current Sensor Fault                           |      |
|    | 2.29 Thermistor System Fault  |      |
|    | 2.30 Abnormal Temperature in Electrical Box                         |      |
|    | 2.31 Temperature Rise in Radiation Fin                              |      |
|    | 2.32 Output Overcurrent   |      |
|    | 2.33 Insufficient Gas   |      |
|    | 2.34 Over Voltage Protection / Low Voltage Protection               | 190  |
|    | 2.35 Outdoor Unit PCB Fault or Communication Circuit Fault          |      |
|    | 2.36 Signal Transmission Error on Outdoor Unit PCB                  | 194  |
|    | 2.37 Fan Motor System Fault / Fan Lock                              | 196  |
|    | 2.38 Heater Wire Fault  |      |
|    | 2.39 Humidification Fan Outlet Thermistor Fault /                   |      |
|    | Abnormal Heater Temperature   | 199  |
|    | 2.40 Lights-out of Microcomputer Status Lamp                        |      |
| 3. | Check   |      |
| 5. | 3.1 Thermistor Resistance Check                                     |      |
|    |   |      |

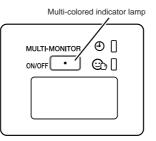
| 3.2  | Installation Condition Check                   | 203 |
|------|--|-----|
| 3.3  | Outdoor Fan System Check (DC Motor)            | 203 |
| 3.4  | Power Supply Waveform Check                    | 204 |
| 3.5  | Capacitor Voltage Check                        | 204 |
| 3.6  | Main Circuit Electrolytic Capacitor Check      | 205 |
| 3.7  | Refrigerant System Check                       | 205 |
| 3.8  | "Inverter Checker" Check                       | 206 |
| 3.9  | Power Transistor Check                         | 207 |
| 3.10 | Discharge Pressure Check                       | 208 |
| 3.11 | Electronic Expansion Valve Check               | 209 |
| 3.12 | Indoor Unit PCB Output Check                   | 210 |
| 3.13 | Rotating Pulse Input on Outdoor Unit PCB Check | 211 |
| 3.14 | Humidity Sensor Check                          | 212 |
| 3.15 | Main Circuit Short Check                       | 212 |
| 3.16 | Four-way Valve Performance Check               | 213 |
| 3.17 | Solenoid Valve for Dehumidification Check      | 214 |
|      |  |     |

### **1. Convenient Service Check Function**

#### Failure diagnosis with operation lamp

The operation lamp on the display of the indoor unit flashes when any of the following failure is detected.

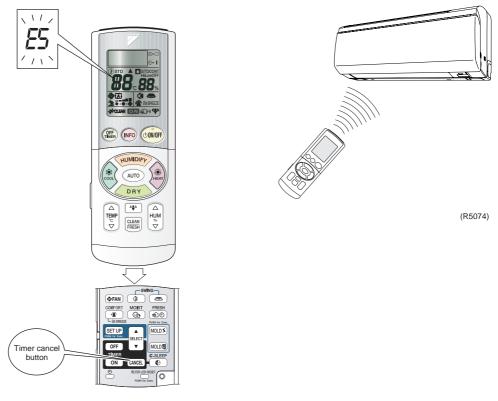
- 1. When a protection device of the indoor or outdoor unit is activated or when the thermistor malfunctions and the machine does not work.
- 2. When a signal transmission error occurs between the indoor and outdoor units.
- For detailed troubleshooting, refer to the following pages "Troubleshooting" (139~).



#### ■ Failure diagnosis by remote controller

With the wireless remote controller supplied with the unit, or sold separately, error codes by failure diagnosis can be confirmed. (Press timer cancel button down for 5 seconds continuously.) **ARC447A series** 

(R5904)



(R5075)

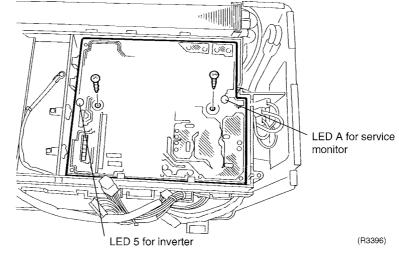
- 1. Hold the timer cancel button down for 5 seconds, with the remote controller set toward the indoor unit.
- 2. The temperature display on the remote controller changes to the error code display and a long beep notifies this indication change.

#### <Note>

To cancel indication of error code, hold the timer cancel button down for 5 seconds. The code display also cancels itself if the button is not pressed for 1 minute.

#### ■ Failure diagnosis by LED indication

- The following failure diagnosis can be done by LED indication on the outdoor unit PCB.
- 1. The outdoor unit has 2 green LED(LED A, LED5) on the PCB.
  - The flashing green LED indicates "in order" condition. The turned ON or OFF LED indicates the failure related to the microcomputer.



- PCB is set upside down (with backside up) to improve its quality.
- LED can be visually inspected through a inspection slit.

# 2. Troubleshooting2.1 Error Code Indication by Remote Controller

\* Various cases may be possible.

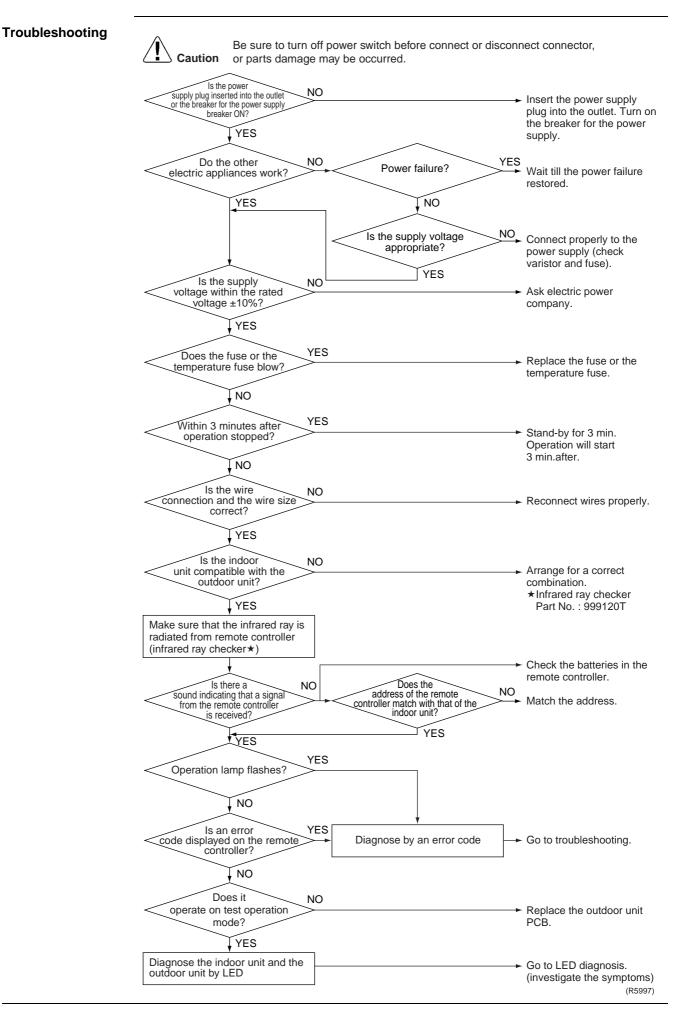
| Code          | Unit             | Description  | Reference page |
|---------------|------------------|--|----------------|
|               |                  | Air conditioner does not run.  | 141            |
|               |                  | Air conditioner runs but does not get cooling (heating).                 | 143            |
| Basic Fail    | ure Diagnosis    | When operation starts, safety breaker works.                             | 145            |
|               |                  | Air conditioner makes big noise and vibration.                           | 147            |
| 8;            |                  | Air does not humidified enough.  | 148            |
|               | _                | Indoor unit PCB fault  | 150            |
| 85            | _                | Peak-cut control or freeze-up protection                                 | 151            |
| 88            |                  | Fan motor system fault   | 153            |
| 88            | Indoor           | Streamer unit fault  | 155            |
| 64            | indeen           | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor fault                                   | 157            |
| 67            |                  | Front panel open / close fault   | 158            |
| 63            |                  | Room temperature thermistor fault  | 157            |
| 55            |                  | Humidity sensor fault  | 159            |
| ε;            |                  | Outdoor unit PCB fault   | 164            |
| 85            | —                | OL activation (compressor overload)                                      | 165            |
| 88            |                  | Compressor lock  | 166            |
| £7            | _                | DC fan lock  | 167            |
| 83            | Outdoor          | Input overcurrent detection  | 168            |
| <u></u><br>88 |                  | Four way valve fault   | 170            |
| F3            | _                | Discharge pipe temperature control                                       | 172            |
| <u>۶۵</u>     | -                | High pressure control in cooling   | 172            |
| HQ            | _                | Compressor sensor system fault   | 175            |
| 81            | Humidifying unit |  | 175            |
| <br>X5        |                  |  |                |
|               | _                | Position sensor fault  | 177            |
| <u> </u>      |                  | DC voltage / DC current sensor fault                                     | 179            |
| 89            | _                | Outdoor air thermistor fault   | 180            |
| 43            |                  | Discharge pipe thermistor fault  | 180            |
| <i>3</i> 8    | Outdoor          | Outdoor heat exchanger thermistor fault                                  | 180            |
| 13            |                  | Abnormal temperature in electrical box                                   | 182            |
| 14            |                  | Temperature rise in radiation fin  | 184            |
| LS            |                  | Output overcurrent   | 186            |
| PY            |                  | Radiation fin thermistor fault   | 180            |
| <i>P</i> 9    |                  | Fan motor system fault / fan lock  | 196            |
| 28            | Humidifying unit | Heater wire fault  | 197            |
| 28            |                  | Humidification fan outlet thermistor fault / abnormal heater temperature | 199            |
| 88            |                  | Insufficient gas   | 141            |
| <i>U2</i>     | System           | Over voltage protection (OVP) / low voltage protection (LVP)             | 143            |
| <u>8</u> 4    | -1               | Signal transmission error (indoor unit - outdoor unit)                   | 160            |
| <b>U</b> 7    | Outdoor          | Outdoor unit PCB fault or communication circuit fault                    | 191            |

| Code       | Unit   | Description  | Reference page |
|------------|--------|--|----------------|
| 17         | System | Signal transmission error on outdoor unit PCB                  | 194            |
| <i>U</i> 8 |        | Incompatible power supply between indoor unit and outdoor unit | 162            |
| LII7       | Indoor | Incomplete setting for hose length                             | 163            |
| _          | System | Lights-out of microcomputer status lamp                        | 201            |

#### 2.2 Air conditioner does not run.

| Method of<br>Malfunction              |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Detection                             |   |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions |   |
| Supposed                              | Power supply is OFF                                   |
| Causes                                | Improper power supply voltage                         |
|                                       | Improper connection of wire                           |
|                                       | Incorrect combination of indoor unit and outdoor unit |
|                                       |   |

- Battery shortage of remote controller
- Invalid address setting
- Protection device works (dirty air filter, insufficient gas, over filling, mixed air, etc.)
- Transmission error between indoor unit and outdoor unit (Defective PCB on outdoor unit)

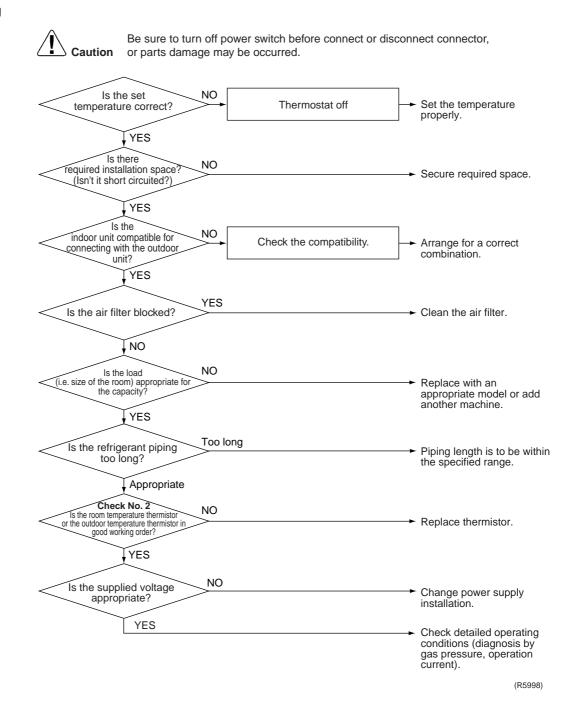


#### Air conditioner runs but does not get cooling (heating). 2.3

| Method of   |   |
|-------------|---|
| Malfunction |   |
| Detection   |   |
| Malfunction |   |
| Decision    |   |
| Conditions  |   |
| Supposed    | Incorrect temperature setting                         |
| Causes      | Incorrect combination of indoor unit and outdoor unit |
|             | Blocked air filter                                    |

- Insufficient power
- Refrigerant piping is too long
- Improper setting of piping length
   Defective field piping (squeezed, etc.)

#### Troubleshooting



Warning:

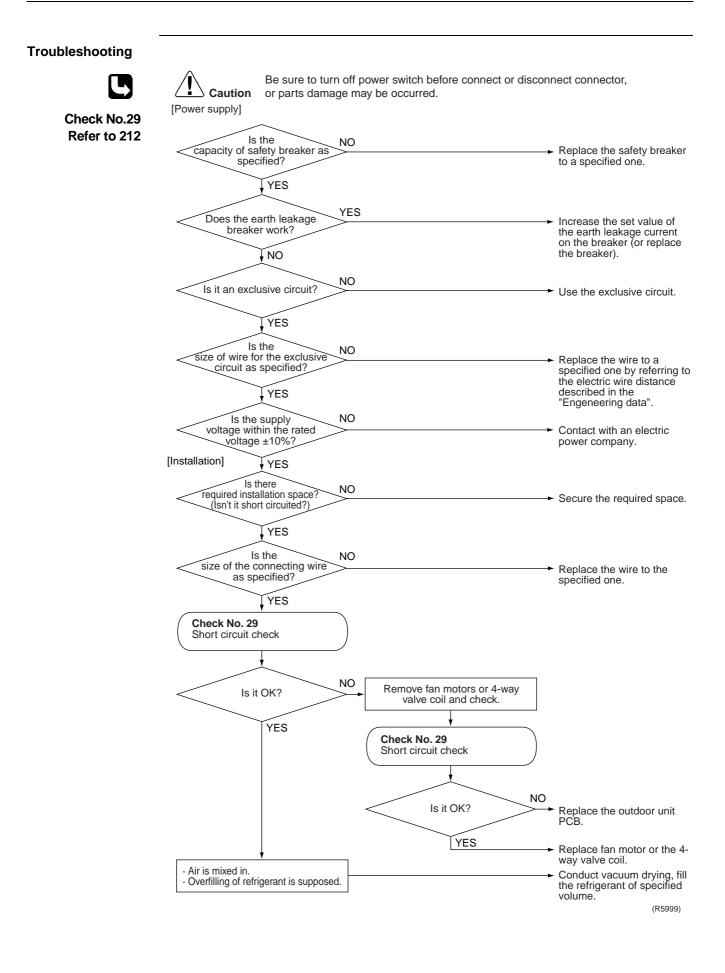
: When an air conditioner does not cool or heat the room, refrigerant leak is considered to be one of the reasons.

Make sure that there is no gas leakage or breaks due to over tightened flare part. (Though the refrigerant used in an air conditioner is itself harmless, but it can generate toxic gases when it leaks into room and contacts flames, such as fan and other heaters, stoves, and ranges. In case of leakage, ventilate the room immediately.)

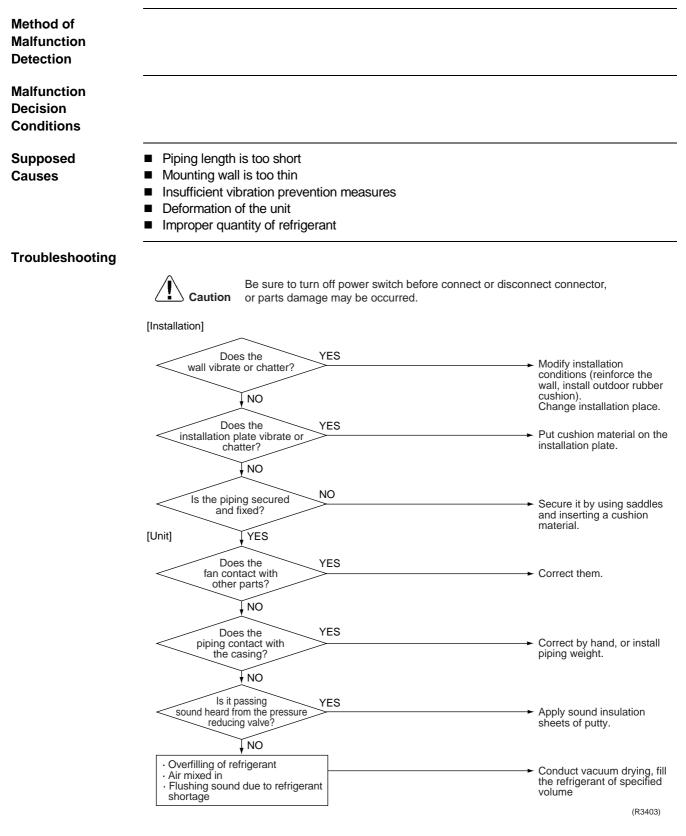
### 2.4 When operation starts, safety breaker works.

| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions |   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Insufficient capacity of safety breaker</li> <li>Earth leakage breaker is too sensitive</li> </ul> |

- Not exclusive circuit
- The supply voltage is not within rated voltage ±10%.
- The size of connecting wire is thin (indoor power supply unit)
- Air is mixed (over filling)
- Damaged outdoor unit PCB (short circuit)



#### 2.5 Air conditioner makes big noise and vibration.

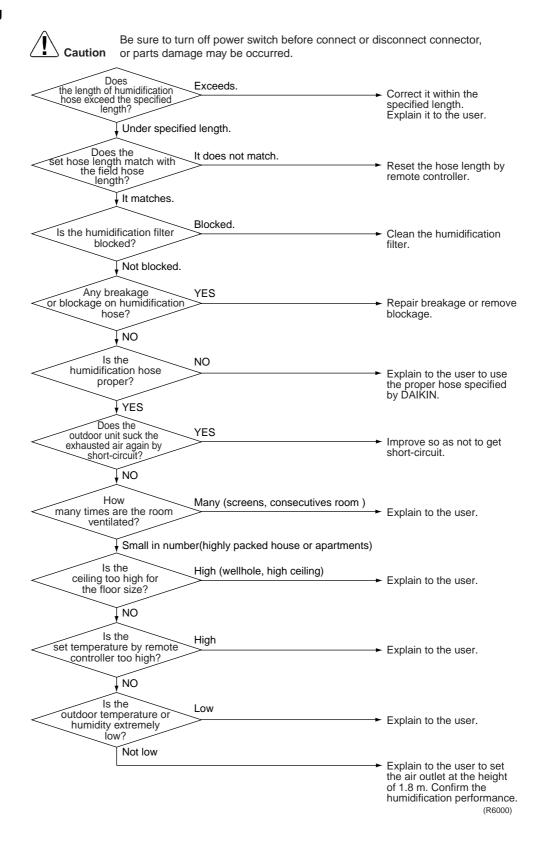


#### Air does not humidified enough. 2.6

| Method of   |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Malfunction |                                 |
| Detection   |                                 |
| Malfunction |                                 |
| Decision    |                                 |
| Conditions  |                                 |
| Supposed    | Hose length is not set          |
| Causes      | Incorrect setting               |
|             | Short circuited at outdoor unit |

- Blocked humidification filter
- Insufficient heat insulation of duct
- Indoor ventilation is made too often
- Ceiling is very high.

#### Troubleshooting

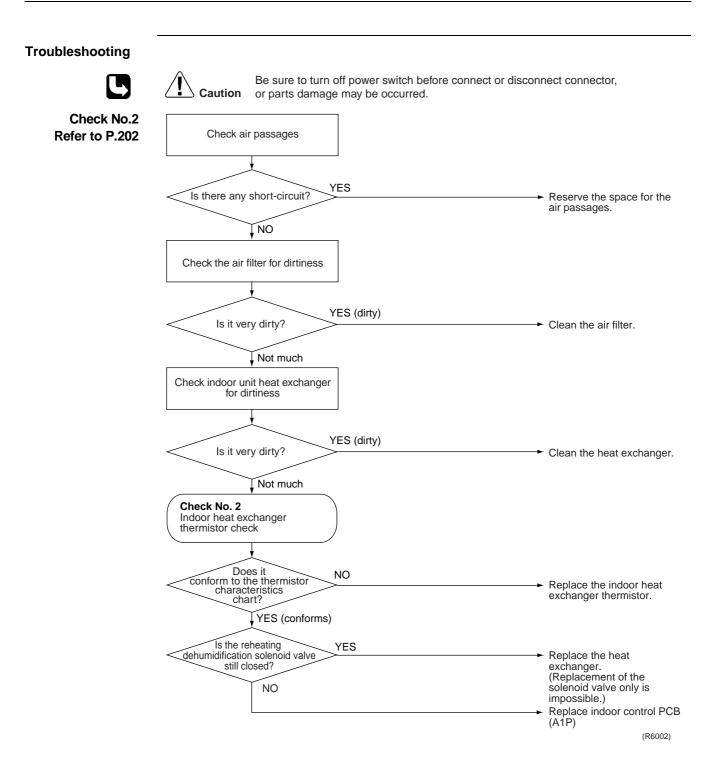


### 2.7 Indoor Unit PCB Fault

|                                       | <u>.</u>   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 8;   |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Check zero-cross detection from the power supply of the indoor unit  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When no zero-cross detection is performed in approximately 10 continuous seconds   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Defective indoor unit PCB (Faulty EEPROM data)</li> <li>Improper connector connection</li> <li>Defective indoor terminal board</li> </ul> |
| Troubleshooting                       |  |
|                                       | Eaution Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.                                  |
|                                       | Is the fault repeated?<br>NO<br>Complete   |
| Note:                                 | <ul> <li>Between terminal board and indoor control PCB.</li> </ul>   |
|                                       |  |

### 2.8 Peak-cut Control or Freeze-up Protection

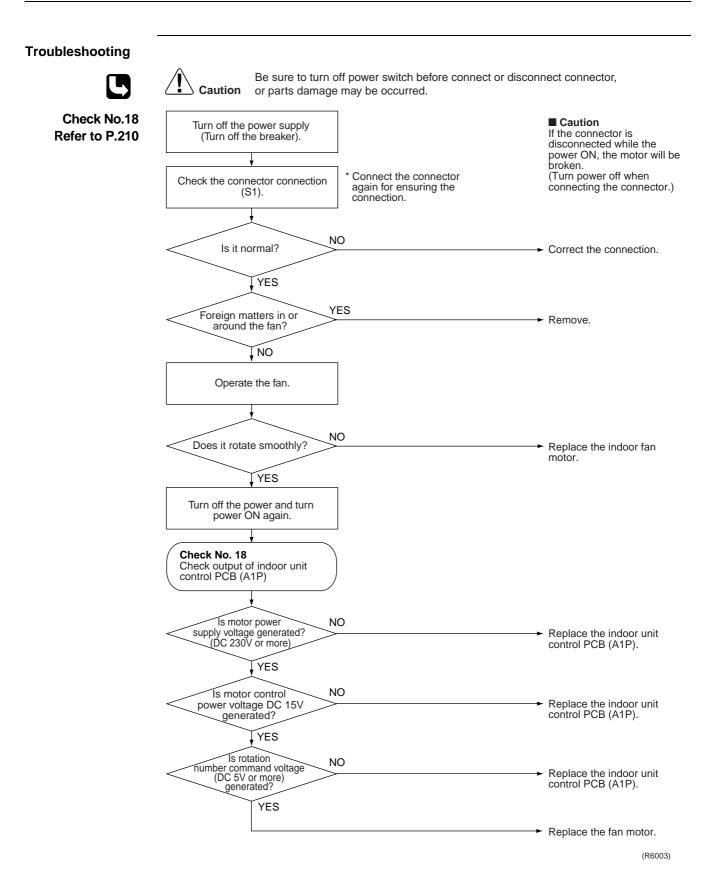
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 85   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | <ul> <li>Peak-cut control (high pressure control)         During heating operation, the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger thermistor         is used for the high pressure control (stop, outdoor fan stop, etc.).     </li> <li>Freeze-up protection control (operation halt) is activated during cooling operation according         to the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger thermistor.</li> </ul> |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>Peak-cut control         <ul> <li>On heating operation, when indoor heat exchanger temperature is about 65°C or more</li> <li>Freeze-up protection                 On cooling operation, indoor heat exchanger temperature is 0°C or less</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Halt due to dirty indoor unit filter</li> <li>Halt due to dirty indoor heat exchanger</li> <li>Halt due to short circuit</li> <li>Faulty detection due to defective indoor heat exchanger thermistor</li> <li>Reheating dehumidification solenoid valve remains closed (on cooling operation)</li> <li>Faulty detection due to defective indoor unit PCB</li> </ul>   |



### 2.9 Fan Motor System (DC Motor) Fault

88 Remote **Controller Display** Method of The fan speed detected by the Hall IC during operation of high-pressure fan motor is used to Malfunction determine abnormal fan operation. Detection Malfunction When the detected fan speed is less than 50% of the HH tap under maximum fan motor rpm demanded Decision Conditions Supposed Halt due to rare short circuit inside the fan motor Causes Halt due to breakage of wire inside the fan motor Halt due to breakage of the lead wire of fan motor Faulty detection due to defective indoor control PCB 

Service Diagnosis



Causes

### 2.10 Streamer Unit Fault

| Remote<br>Controller<br>Display       | 88   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>If the error repeats 3 times in air purifying operation.</li> <li>Clearing condition: Continuous run for about 2 minutes (normal).</li> </ul> |
| Supposed                              | Short circuit caused by the dust or drip of water on the streamer unit electrode part.   |

- Scratch or crack in the harness for the streamer unit.
- Faulty indoor unit PCB

Troubleshooting

#### Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, Caution or parts damage may be occurred. YES Dust or drip of Clean the streamer unit. water is on the streamer unit. NO Does the NO multi-monitor LED blink about Clean the streamer unit. 1 minute after air purifying operation starts. YES Turn off the power supply (Turn off the breaker). NO Is the streamer unit Install it surely. installed surely. YES Check the connector connection Connect the connector again for (S52). ensuring the connection. NO Is it normal? Correct the connection. YES NO Is the limit switch normal? Replace the limit switch. YES Check the harness. YES Is it broken? Replace the harness. NO Replace the streamer unit PCB (A5P) Note 1. Be careful not to break the electrode in cleaning. ■ Note 2. Since the electrode part is electrified in high voltage, be sure to pull out the power supply plug or turn breaker off in cleaning the electrode part. (Touching in electrifying results in electrical shock.) (R6006)

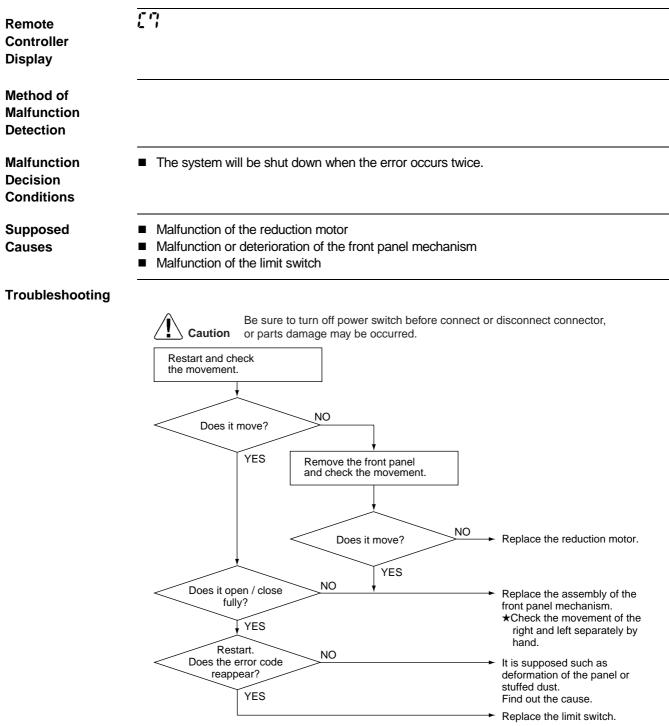
### 2.11 Thermistor System Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 64,63  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Thermistor fault is detected based on the temperature determined by each thermistor  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When power is supplied and the input of thermistor is 4.96 V or more or 0.04 V or less * (for reference)<br>In case of 120 $\Omega$ (equivalent to 212°C) or less or 1860 k $\Omega$ (equivalent to –50°C) or more |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Improper connector connection</li> <li>Defective thermistor</li> <li>Defective PCB for indoor unit control system</li> <li>Defective PCB for indoor humidity sensor</li> </ul>                            |
| Troubleshooting<br>Chart              | Caution Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.  |
| Check No.2<br>Refer to P.202          | connection  Is it OK?  NO  Reconnect properly.   |
|                                       | YES<br>Check No. 2<br>Thermistor resistance check  |
|                                       | Is it OK? NO Replace thermistor.<br>(Replace the humidity<br>sensor PCB(A4P).)   |
|                                       | Replace control PCB (A1P).   |

- $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{H}$ : Indoor heat exchanger thermistor
- $\mathcal{LS}$  : Room temperature thermistor

(R6005)

#### 2.12 Front Panel Open / Close Fault



(R3313)

Note:

You cannot operate the unit by the remote controller when the front panel mechanism breaks down.

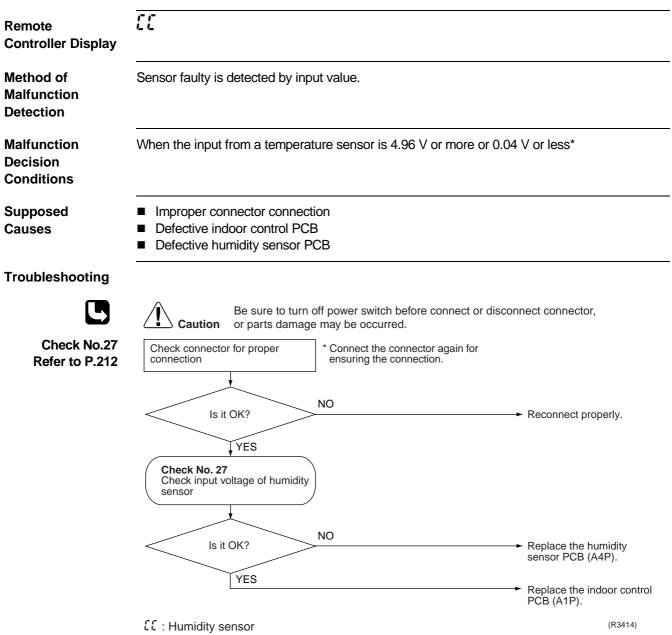
<To the dealers: temporary measure before repair>

- 1. Turn the breaker off.
- 2. Remove the front panel.
- 3. Turn the breaker on.

(Wait until the initialization finishes.)

4. Operate the unit by the indoor unit ON/OFF switch.

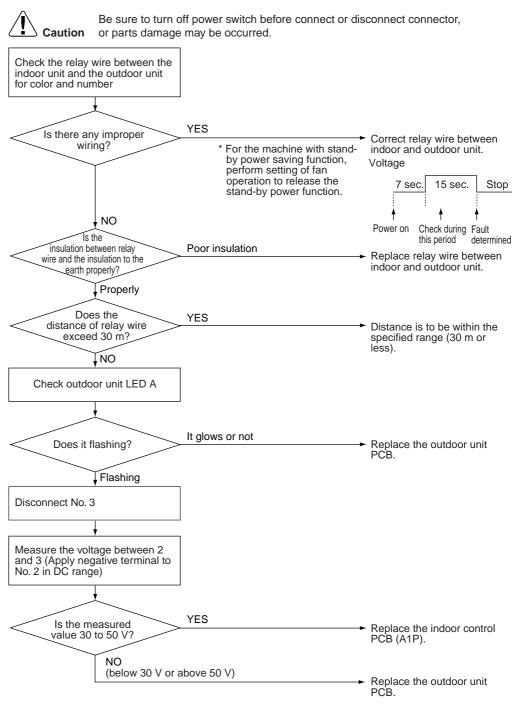
#### 2.13 Humidity Sensor Fault



### 2.14 Signal Transmission Error (Indoor Unit - Outdoor Unit)

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | <u>8</u> 4   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | The data sent from the outdoor unit is checked for problem.  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When the data sent from the outdoor unit can not be received without error, or when the disable status of signal transmission continues for 15 sec. and the same status continuously repeats 3 times.  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Defective indoor unit PCB</li> <li>Signal transmission error between indoor and outdoor unit due to improper wiring</li> <li>Signal transmission error between indoor and outdoor unit due to breakage of relay wire (transmission wire)</li> </ul> |

#### Troubleshooting



(R6006)

## 2.15 Incompatible Power Supply between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | UR   |   |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Check the incompatible power supply between indoor unit and outdoo transmission.   | or unit by using signal   |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | In case that the indoor intake model is connected to outdoor intake m  | odel.   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Connected to wrong model</li> <li>Mounted improper indoor unit PCB</li> <li>Defective indoor unit PCB</li> <li>Mounted improper outdoor unit PCB or defective PCB</li> </ul>  |   |
| Troubleshooting                       | Caution       Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or discont or parts damage may be occurred.         Check model names of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit       NO         Is the outdoor unit correct?       NO         YES       YES | <ul> <li>Arrange for a correct<br/>combination.</li> <li>Replace the indoor control<br/>PCB (A1P) (or replace the<br/>outdoor unit PCB).</li> </ul> |

(R6007)

#### 2.16 Incomplete Setting for Hose Length

| Remote<br>Controller Display          |   |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | This fault occurs when the humidification hose length is not stored in the EEPROMs of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit. (Hose length is not stored at initial power on.)  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When the humidification hose length is not stored in EEPROMs of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.   |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | Hose length is not set.<br>Hose length is erased by replacement of the indoor unit PCB or the outdoor unit PCB. (When<br>both the indoor unit and the outdoor unit PCBs are replaced simultaneously, the set value is<br>erased.) |  |
| Troubleshooting                       | <b>Caution</b> Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.  |  |



(R3418)

### 2.17 Outdoor Unit PCB Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | ε:  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$¢ 5 \$¢  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | <ul> <li>Detect within the programme of the microcomputer that the proorder.</li> <li>Detect input of zero-cross signal.</li> </ul>   | ogramme is in good running   |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When the programme of the microcomputer is in bad running</li> <li>Zero-cross signal can not be detected.</li> </ul>   | order.   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Out of control of microcomputer caused by external factors</li> <li>Noise</li> <li>Momentary fall of voltage</li> <li>Momentary power loss</li> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Breakage of harness between PCBs</li> </ul>          |  |
|                                       | Caution       Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or dis or parts damage may be occurred.         Power on again       Power on again         Dose the LED A flash?       NO         YES       Check to see that the machine is grounded. | <ul> <li>Connect connector,</li> <li>→ Replace the outdoor unit PCB.</li> </ul>  |
|                                       | Grounded?<br>VES<br>Is harness in good<br>VES   | → Carry out grounding work.  |
|                                       | NO  | <ul> <li>Zero-cross signal is fault.<br/>Replace the outdoor unit<br/>PCB.</li> <li>Replace harness.</li> <li>(R6008)</li> </ul> |

### 2.18 OL Activation (Compressor Overload)

| Remote<br>Controller                             | 85   |   |
|--|--|---|
| Display<br>Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | A compressor overload is detected through compressor OL.   |   |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions            | <ul> <li>If the compressor OL is activated twice, the system will be sh</li> <li>The error counter will reset itself if this or any other error does 60-minute compressor running time (total time).</li> <li>* The operating temperature condition is not specified.</li> </ul> |   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                               | <ul> <li>Refrigerant shortage</li> <li>Four way valve malfunctioning</li> <li>Outdoor unit PCB defective</li> <li>Water mixed in the local piping</li> <li>Electronic expansion valve defective</li> <li>Stop valve defective</li> </ul>   |   |
| Troubleshooting<br>Check No.17                   | Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or d or parts damage may be occurred.  | isconnect connector,  |
| Check No.17<br>Refer to P.209<br>Check No.31     | Discharge pipe thermistor<br>disconnected?   | Insert the thermistor in position.  |
| Refer to P.213                                   | Check No. 2<br>Check the thermistors<br>Functioning  | Replace the discharge pipe thermistor.  |
| Refer to P.202<br>Check No.12<br>Refer to P.205  | Check No. 17<br>Check the electronic expantion<br>valve.<br>Functioning  | → Replace the valve itself or the coil.   |
|  | Check No. 30<br>Check the four way valve.<br>Functioning   | → Replace the four way valve coil or the valve itself.<br>Replace the outdoor unit PCB.                           |
|  | Check No. 12       Malfunctioning         Check the refrigerant line.       * Refrigerant shortage         * Water mixed       * Water mixed         * Stop valve defective       * Stop valve defective   | <ul> <li>Refer to the refrigerant line check procedure.</li> <li>Replace the outdoor unit PCB. (R6009)</li> </ul> |

#### 2.19 Compressor Lock

| •                                     |  |   |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 88   |   |
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A☆ 5☆(-)   |   |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Judging from current waveform generated when high-frequency v compressor.  | oltage is applied to the  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>The machine is shut down when the fault count reaches 16.</li> <li>Clear condition: Continuous operation for 11 min. (without fau</li> </ul>  | it)   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul><li>Compressor lock</li><li>Disconnection of compressor harness</li></ul>  |   |
| Troubleshooting                       |  |   |
| Check No.14<br>Refer to P.206         | Caution       Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disc<br>or parts damage may be occurred.         Turn off the power supply, and<br>disconnect U, V, and W<br>harnesses         Check No.14<br>Check the inverter by the<br>inverter checker*         Is it OK?         YES         Turn off the power supply, replace<br>the harnesses, and restart the<br>compressor after turning on the<br>power supply again. | onnect connector,  * Inverter checker Part No.: 1225477  → Rectify the power supply or replace the outdoor unit PCB.  |
|                                       | Does the YES<br>compressor stop without<br>running?<br>NO<br>Does the<br>machine shut down after<br>repeating stop of compressor<br>several times?<br>YES  | <ul> <li>Replace the compressor.</li> <li>Check the electronic expansion valve.<br/>Replace the electronic expansion valve.</li> <li>Replace the compressor.</li> </ul> |

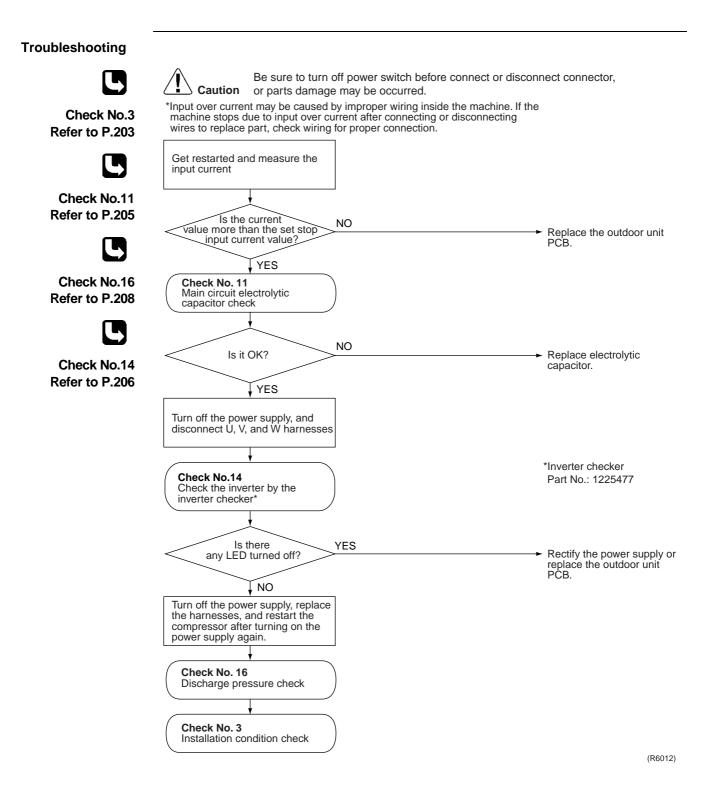
(R6010)

#### 2.20 DC Fan Lock

27 Remote **Controller Display Outdoor Unit LED** Αð 5 🗘 (-) Display Method of Identify the fan motor system fault based on fan speed detected by Hall IC during high pressure Malfunction fan motor running. Detection Malfunction When the fan motor is running, the fan does not rotate for 60 sec. or more. Decision Shut down when the error repeats 16 times Clear condition: The fan continuously rotates for 11 min.(without fault) Conditions Supposed Failure in fan motor Causes Disconnection or improper connection of harness/connector between fan motor and PCB The fan does not rotate because it gets caught in foreign matter Troubleshooting Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, Caution or parts damage may be occurred. Check No.23 Is the YES Refer to P.211 connector of the fan motor Turn off the power supply, disconnected? then insert the connector. NO YES Is there any Remove them. foreign matter around the fan? NO Try to operate Check No. 23 Check the outdoor unit PCB for rpm command pulse input NO Is the pulse input? Replace the outdoor fan motor. YES Replace the outdoor unit PCB. (R6011)

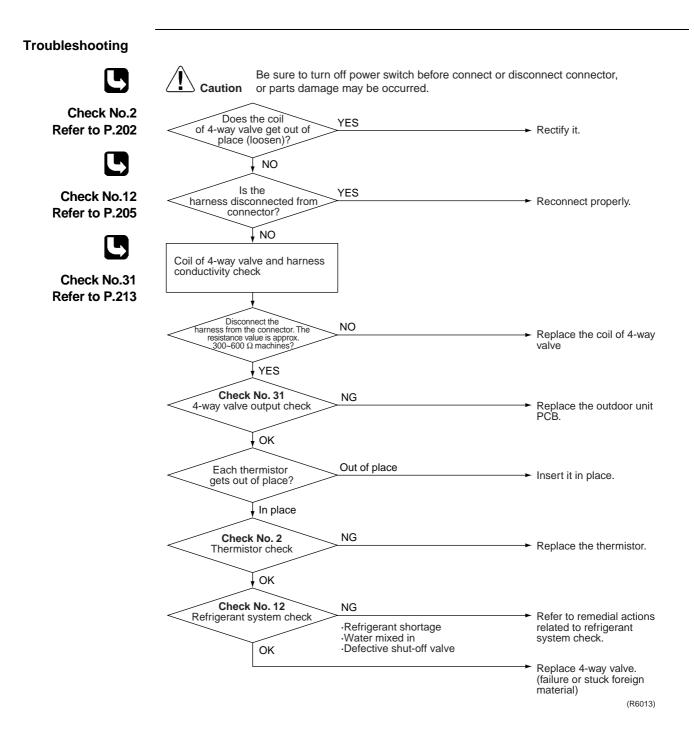
### 2.21 Input Over Current Detection

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 88   |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A (-)  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Detect an input overcurrent by checking the inverter power consumption or the input current detected by CT with the compressor running.  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When 14 A or more of inverter power consumption or CT input continues for 5 sec.</li> <li>The compressor stops if the error occurs, and restarts automatically after 3 minutes standby.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Overcurrent due to defective compressor</li> <li>Overcurrent due to defective power transistor</li> <li>Overcurrent due to defective electrolytic capacitor of inverter main circuit</li> <li>Overcurrent due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Detection error due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Overcurrent due to short circuit</li> </ul> |  |  |



## 2.22 Four Way Valve Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 88   |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A☆ 5 � (-)   |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | The room temperature thermistor, the indoor heat exchanger thermistor, the outdoor air thermistor, and the outdoor heat exchanger thermistor are checked to see if they function within their normal ranges in the operating mode.   |  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When one of the follow condition continues for 10 min, the compressor stops, and restarts automatically after 3 minutes standby.</li> <li>Cooling / drying         <ul> <li>(Room temperature – temperature of indoor heat exchanger) &lt; – 5°C</li> <li>Heating</li> <li>(Temperature of indoor heat exchanger – room temperature ) &lt; – 5°C</li> </ul> </li> <li>Shut down when the error repeats twice</li> <li>Clear condition : Continuous operation for 60 minutes.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Improper connector connection</li> <li>Defective thermistor</li> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Defective coil or harness of 4-way valve</li> <li>Defective 4-way valve</li> <li>Insufficient gas</li> <li>Foreign substance mixed in refrigerant</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |



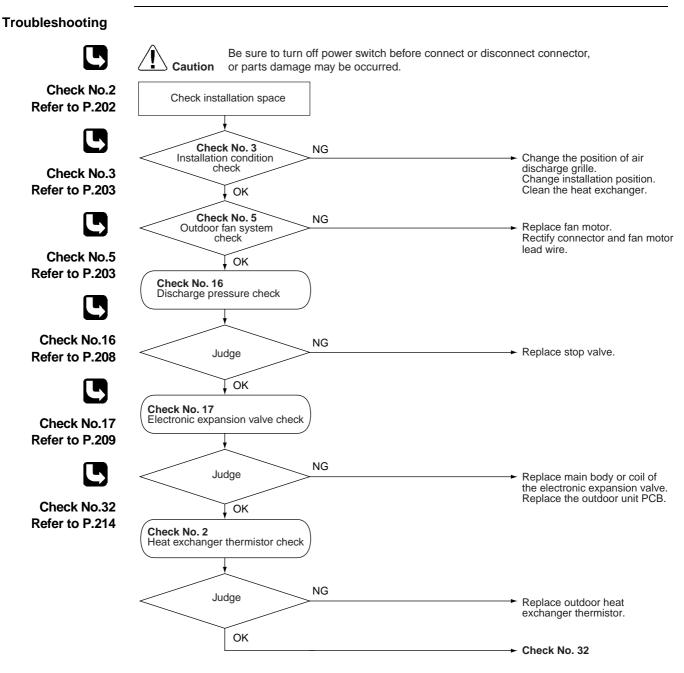
# 2.23 Discharge Pipe Temperature Control

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 83   |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Discharge pipe temperature control (stop, frequency attenuation, etc.) is executed based on the temperature detected by the discharge pipe thermistor.   |  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>The compressor stops when the discharge pipe temperature is 118°C or more. (Fault condition is cleared when the discharge pipe temperature is below 85°C)</li> <li>Shut down when the error repeats 4 times</li> <li>Clear condition : Continuous operation for 60 minutes</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Insufficient gas</li> <li>Faulty operation of 4-way valve</li> <li>Defective discharge pipe thermistor<br/>(Defective heat exchanger thermistor or outdoor air thermistor)</li> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Water mixed in the field piping</li> <li>Defective electronic expansion valve</li> <li>Defective stop valve</li> <li>Defective indoor solenoid valve</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |
| Troubleshooting                       | Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disco<br>or parts damage may be occurred.   | onnect connector,  |  |  |  |
| Check No.2<br>Refer to P.202          | Check No. 2<br>Thermistor check<br>Outdoor heat exchanger thermistor<br>Outdoor air thermistor   | → Replace the thermistor.  |  |  |  |
| L.                                    | OK   |  |  |  |  |
| Check No.12<br>Refer to P.205         | OK<br>Check No. 17<br>Electronic expansion valve<br>check<br>VOK   | <ul> <li>Replace main body or coil of<br/>electronic expansion valve.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

# 2.24 High Pressure Control in Cooling

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 88   |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓ (-)  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | During cooling, high pressure control (stop, frequency attenuation, etc.) is executed according to the temperature detected by the heat exchanger thermistor.  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | During cooling, when the temperature detected by the heat exchanger thermistor is 63°C or more. (Fault condition is cleared when the temperature is below 52°C.)   |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Insufficient installation space</li> <li>Defective outdoor fan</li> <li>Defective electronic expansion valve</li> <li>Defective heat exchanger thermistor</li> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Defective stop valve</li> <li>Defective solenoid valve for dehumidification</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

#### Troubleshooting



(R3433)

#### 2.25 Compressor Sensor System Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | XC   |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$ 5\$ (-)  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Fault condition is identified by DC current which is detected before compressor startup.   |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When the DC current before compressor startup is other than 0.5 to 4.5 V (detected by converting the sensor output to voltage), or the DC voltage is 50 V or less. |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Defective PCB</li> <li>Harness disconnection / defective connection</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |
| Troubleshooting                       | Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.  |  |  |  |

Replace the outdoor unit PCB.

#### Dampor Fault 00 -

| 2.26 Damp                             | ei raun  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | X ;  |  |  |  |  |
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | Αφ 5φ  |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Detected by the limit switch (LS) in the humidification unit.  |  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | Limit switch does not turn on or off when the operation of humidification unit starts or<br>finishes. For example, when turning on the power supply, when humidification operation<br>(including air intake) starts, or when inner heating dry cleaning starts.  |  |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Faulty damper operation due to frost</li> <li>Faulty damper operation due to foreign material</li> <li>Limit switch fault (including improper connection)</li> <li>Defective motor for damper</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
| Troubleshooting                       | Defective motor for damper          Image: Caution       Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.         Image: State of the damper fixed due to frost?       Image: State of the damper unit and melt fost         Image: State of the damper fixed due to frost?       Image: State of the damper unit and melt fost         Image: State of the damper fixed due to frost?       Image: State of the damper unit and melt fost         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the damper due to frost?         Image: State of the damper due to frost?       Image: State of the |  |  |  |  |

(R3435)

# 2.27 Position Sensor Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | XS  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓ (-)   |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Startup failure of the compressor is identified by rpm information of the compressor and by electric component position detector.   |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When the compressor does not run for 15 sec. after receiving operation start command</li> <li>The machine shuts down if the fault occurs 16 times</li> <li>Clear condition: The compressor continuously runs for 10 min. without fault</li> </ul>                    |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Detection error due to disconnection of compressor harness</li> <li>Startup failure due to defective compressor</li> <li>Startup failure due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Startup failure due to closed stop valve</li> <li>Input voltage fault</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

#### Troubleshooting Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, Caution or parts damage may be occurred. Check No.16 Check the power supply Refer to P.208 Check No. 16 Discharge pressure check Check No.29 Refer to P.212 NG Judge Replace stop valve. OK Check No.14 Check No. 29 Short circuit check Refer to P.206 NO Is it OK? Replace Outdoor unit PCB Outdoor fan ·Humidification fan YES 4way valve coil Check the voltage of electrolytic capacitor NO Replace the outdoor unit PCB. DC270±30V? YES Is the harness of NO electric component or compressor connected properly? Connect properly. Turn off the power supply, and disconnect U, V, and W harnesses \*Inverter checker Check No.14 Check the inverter by the Part No.: 1225477 inverter checker\* YES Is there any LED Rectify the power supply or turned off? replace the outdoor unit PCB. NO Replace the compressor.

(R3436)

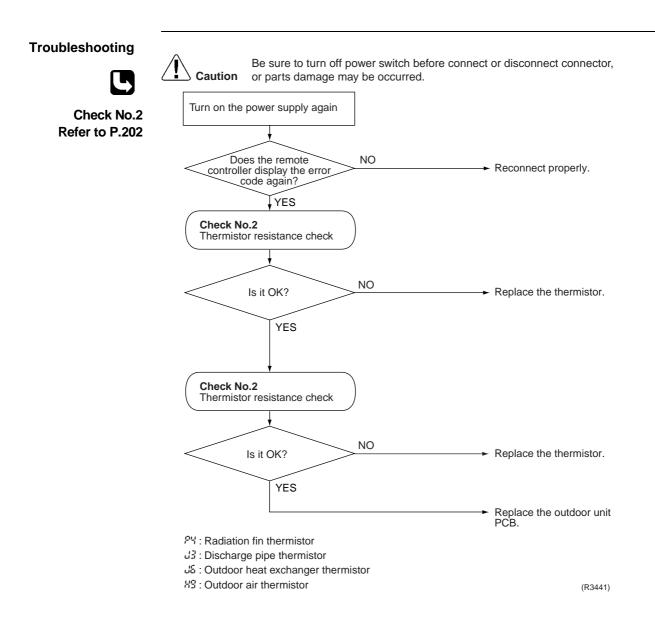
#### 2.28 DC Voltage / DC Current Sensor Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | <b>₩8</b><br>Aφ 5φ (-)   |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | DC voltage or DC current sensor system fault is identified based on the compressor operation frequency and the input current detected by the product of DC current and DC voltage.   |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When the compressor operation frequency is more than 62 Hz<br/>and when the input current is less than 0.75 A for 90 sec. continuously<br/>(Input current is below 0.5 A)</li> <li>The machine shuts down when the fault occurs 4 times.</li> <li>Fault counter will be reset to zero if the machine will not stop during accumulated<br/>compressor operation time of 60 min. after restored from fault conditions.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | Defective outdoor unit PCB   |  |  |  |
| Troubleshooting                       | Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector,   |  |  |  |
|                                       | <b>Caution</b> or parts damage may be occurred.  |  |  |  |

Replace the outdoor unit PCB.

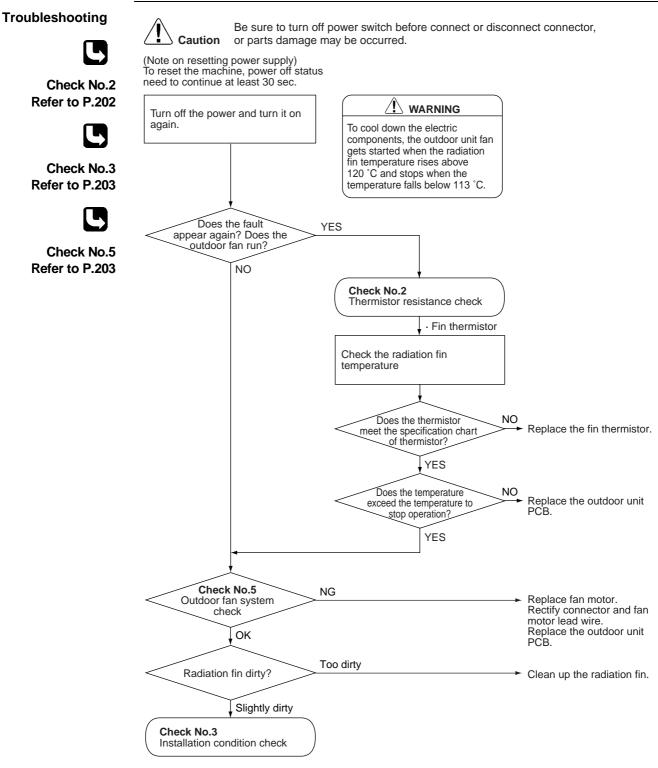
# 2.29 Thermistor System Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | PH, 13, 16, HS   |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5 -   |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | This fault is identified based on the thermistor input voltage to the microcomputer.<br>A thermistor fault is identified based on the temperature detected by each thermistor.   |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When power is supplied and the thermistor input is 4.98 V or more<br>or when the thermistor input is 0.02 V or less for 5 sec. continuously<br>For J3,<br>"Discharge pipe thermistor < heat exchanger thermistor" is take into consideration to identify the<br>fault. |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Improper connection of connector</li> <li>Defective thermistor</li> <li>Defective indoor unit PCB</li> <li>For J3, defective heat exchanger thermistor<br/>(Cooling: outdoor heat exchanger thermistor, heating: indoor heat exchanger thermistor)</li> </ul> |  |  |  |



## 2.30 Abnormal Temperature in Electrical Box

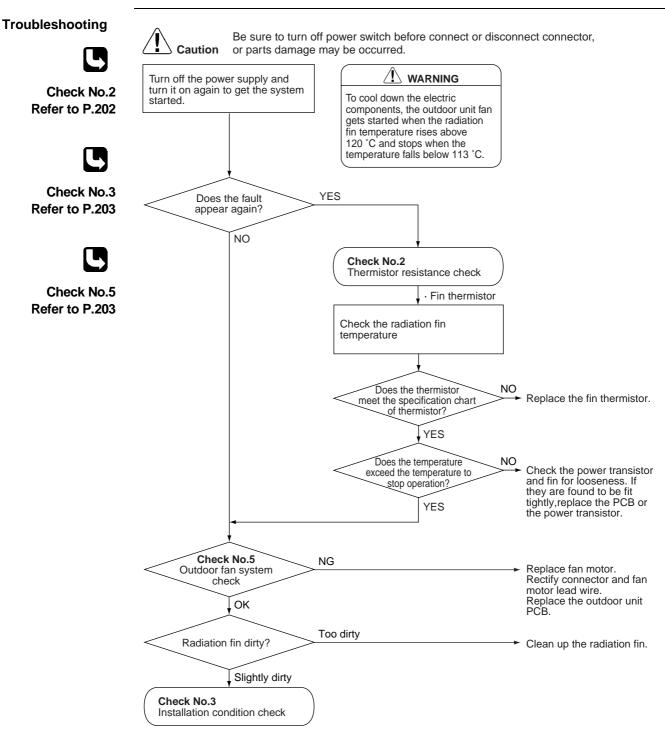
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 13  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A¢) 5 -   |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Temperature rise in the electrical box is identified based on the temperature of the radiation fin detected by the fin thermistor with the compressor off.  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When the temperature of the radiation fin is 122°C or more during the compressor off. (When the temperature drops below 113°C, fault condition is cleared.)   |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Fin temperature rise due to defective outdoor fan</li> <li>Fin temperature rise due to short circuit</li> <li>Detection error due to defective fin thermistor</li> <li>Detection error due to improper connection of connector</li> <li>Detection error due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> </ul> |  |  |



(R6014)

## 2.31 Temperature Rise in Radiation Fin

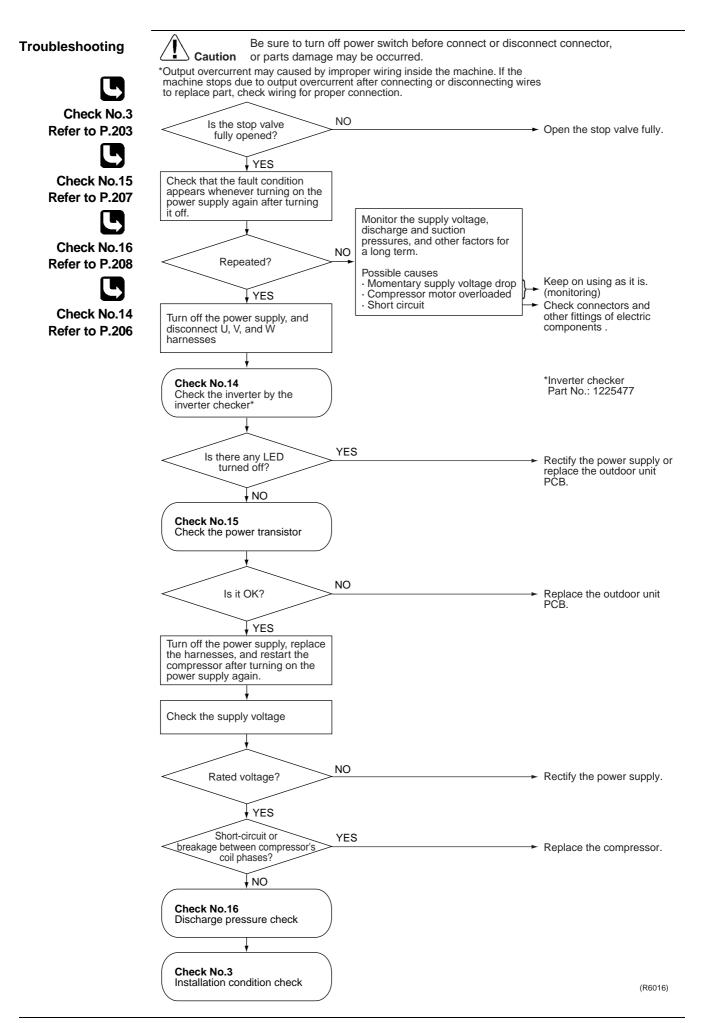
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 24  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$ 5\$   |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Temperature rise in the radiation fin is identified based on the temperature of the radiation fin detected by the fin thermistor with the compressor on.  |  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>The compressor stops when the radiation fin temperature is 86 °C or more. (Fault condition is cleared when the radiation fin temperature is below 67 °C.)</li> <li>Shut down when the error repeats 255 times</li> <li>Clear condition : Continuous operation for 60 minutes</li> </ul>              |  |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Fin temperature rise due to defective outdoor fan</li> <li>Fin temperature rise due to short circuit</li> <li>Detection error due to defective fin thermistor</li> <li>Detection error due to improper connection of connector</li> <li>Detection error due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |



(R6015)

#### 2.32 Output Overcurrent

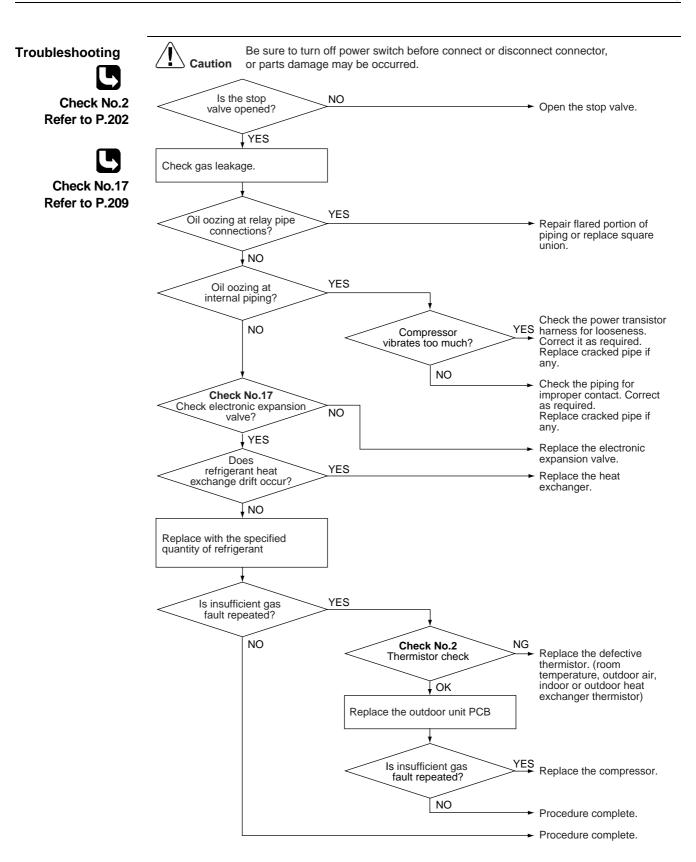
| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 25  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$ 5\$   |  |  |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | An output overcurrent is detected by checking the current that flows in the inverter DC section.  |  |  |  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>A position signal error occurs while the compressor is running.</li> <li>A speed error occurs while the compressor is running.</li> <li>The machine shuts down when the signal of output overcurrent is sent 8 times from the output overcurrent detection circuit to the microcomputer.</li> <li>Clear condition: The machine continuously runs for about 11 min. (without fault)</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Overcurrent due to defective power transistor</li> <li>Overcurrent due to wrong internal wiring</li> <li>Overcurrent due to abnormal supply voltage</li> <li>Overcurrent due to defective PCB</li> <li>Detection error due to defective PCB</li> <li>Overcurrent due to closed stop valve</li> <li>Overcurrent due to defective compressor</li> <li>Overcurrent due to poor installation condition</li> <li>Defective indoor solenoid valve</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |



#### 2.33 Insufficient Gas

| Remote<br>Controller Display          |   |  |          |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|----------|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A� 5� (-)   |  |          |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Gas shortage detection I:<br>Gas shortage is detected by checking the input current value and the compressor running<br>frequency. If the gas is short, the input current is smaller than the normal value. |  |          |  |
|                                       | Gas shorta  | age detection III:<br>age is detected by checking the difference between ambient te<br>temperature. If the gas is short, the difference is smaller than  | •        |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul><li>The following</li><li>Input control</li><li>Output</li><li>Gas short</li></ul>  | age detection I:<br>ing conditions continue for 7 minutes.<br>urrent × input voltage $\leq 2800 / 256$ × output frequency –350 (V<br>frequency > 54 (Hz)<br>age detection III:<br>difference of the temperature is smaller than $A$ , it is regarded |          |  |
|                                       |   | ······ , ···· · ···· , ····· · · ···· , ····· · · ····· , ····· · · ····· , ····· · · ····· , ····· · · ······   | <b>3</b> |  |
|                                       | Cooling   | room temperature - indoor heat exchanger temperature   | 4.0°C    |  |
|                                       | Cooling   | outdoor heat exchanger temperature - outdoor temperature   | 4.0°C    |  |
|                                       | Heating   | indoor heat exchanger temperature – room temperature   | 4.0°C    |  |
|                                       | ricating  | outdoor temperature - outdoor heat exchanger temperature   | 4.0°C    |  |
|                                       | counter wi  | ortage error takes place 4 times straight, the system will be sh<br>I reset itself if this or any other error does not occur during the<br>or running time (total time).   |          |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Refrigerant shortage (refrigerant leakage)</li> <li>Refrigerant heat exchanger drift</li> <li>Poor compression performance of compressor</li> </ul>  |  |          |  |

- Closed stop valve
- Defective electronic expansion valve
- Defective solenoid valve for dehumidifying



(R3446)

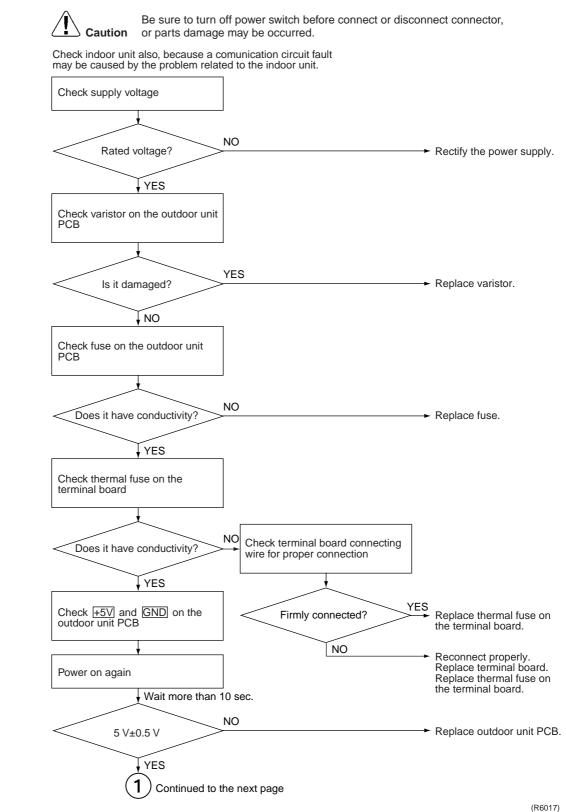
#### 2.34 Over Voltage Protection / Low Voltage Protection

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | <u>U2</u>  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓ (-)  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Detect an abnormal increase or drop of voltage by the detection circuit or DC voltage detection circuit.   |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When an overcurrent signal is sent to the microcomputer from the overcurrent detection circuit, or the voltage detected by DC voltage detection circuit is less than 150 V and that voltage continues for about 0.1 sec.</li> <li>The machine shuts down if the fault conditions occurs 255 times</li> <li>Fault counter is reset when the machine continuously runs for 60 min. without fault.</li> </ul>  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Abnormal supply voltage, momentary power failure</li> <li>Defective overcurrent detector or defective DC voltage detection circuit</li> <li>Failure in PAM controlled parts</li> </ul>  |
| Troubleshooting                       | Image: Note of the specified supply voltage       Note on turning on the power supply split again, power off status need to continue at least 30 sec.         Vertication       Note on turning on the power supply again, power off status need to continue at least 30 sec.         Des the power supply again?       Distorbance factors         Note on turning on the power supply       Note on turning on the power supply again, power off status need to continue at least 30 sec.         Note on turning on the power supply       Note on turning on the power supply again, power off status need to continue at least 30 sec.         No       Note on turning on the power supply         No       No         No       No         Repeat 2 or 3       No |
|                                       | times. Replace the outdoor unit PCB.   |
|                                       | (B3449)  |

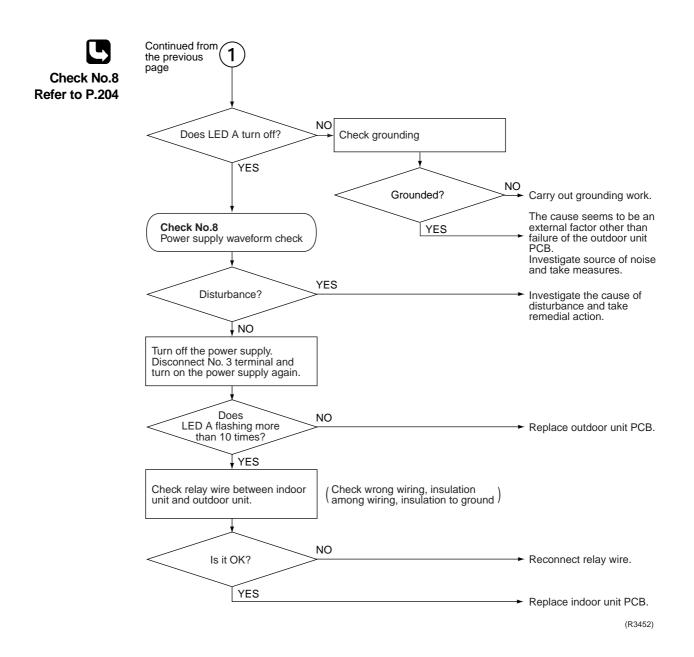
# 2.35 Outdoor Unit PCB Fault or Communication Circuit Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display | <u>U</u> Y  |  |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display  | A¢ 5-   |  |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction     | 1. Detect within the programme of the microcomputer that the programme is in good running order.  |  |  |
| Detection                    | <ol> <li>When indoor-outdoor unit signal transmission can not be performed for more than 15 sec.</li> <li>Detection of the presence or absence of zero-cross signal.</li> </ol> |  |  |
| Malfunction                  | 1. When the programme of the microcomputer is in bad running order.   |  |  |
| Decision                     | 2. When indoor-outdoor unit signal transmission can not be performed for more than 15 sec.  |  |  |
| Conditions                   | 3. When zero-cross signal can not be detected for more than 10 sec.   |  |  |
| Supposed                     | Display disabled due to power supply fault  |  |  |
| Causes                       | Communication circuit fault in outdoor unit PCB   |  |  |
|                              | <ul> <li>Out of control of microcomputer caused by external factors</li> </ul>  |  |  |
|                              | Noise   |  |  |
|                              | <ul> <li>Momentary voltage drop</li> </ul>  |  |  |
|                              | Momentary power loss  |  |  |
|                              | Defective outdoor unit PCB  |  |  |
|                              | Defective thermal fuse in outdoor terminal board  |  |  |

#### Troubleshooting



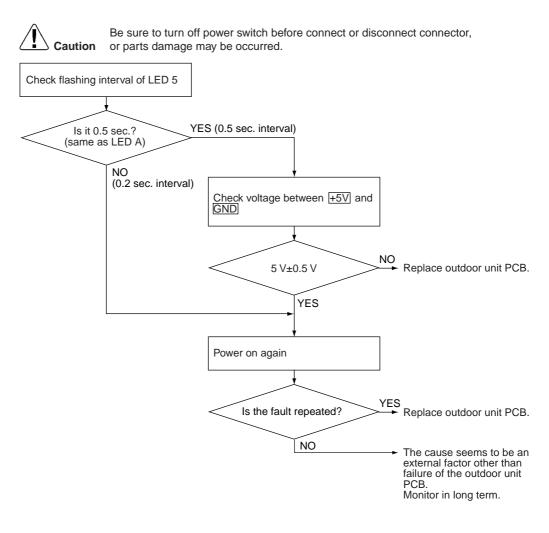
Service Diagnosis



## 2.36 Signal Transmission Error on Outdoor Unit PCB

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | บา  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓ (-)   |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Communication error between microcomputer mounted on the main body and inverter.  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <ul> <li>When the data sent from the microcomputer of the inverter can not be received 15 times successively or for 15 sec, the machine shuts down.</li> <li>Fault counter is reset when the data from the microcomputer of the inverter can be successfully received.</li> </ul> |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>Disconnection or breakage of harness between PCBs</li> </ul>   |  |

#### Troubleshooting



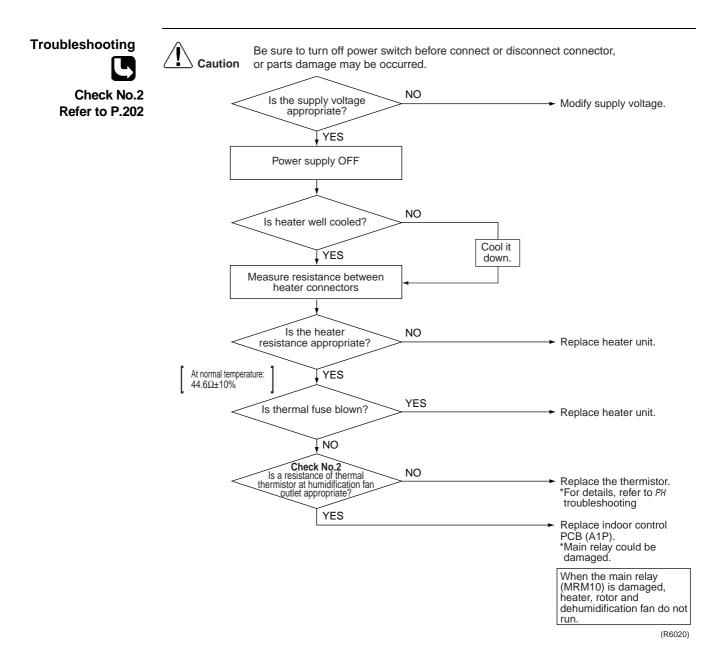
(R6018)

## 2.37 Fan Motor System Fault / Fan Lock

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | <i>P</i> 3   |   |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$¢ 5\$¢  |   |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | During humidification fan motor running, fan motor system fault is i<br>speed (rpm) detected by Hall IC.   | dentified based on the fan  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | <humidification fan=""><br/>When fan speed does not reach 100 rpm within 7 sec. after fan mo</humidification>  | tor start up.   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li><humidification fan=""></humidification></li> <li>Defective motor for humidification fan</li> <li>Breakage of relay harness or loose connector</li> <li>Detection fault of fan speed due to defective outdoor unit PCB</li> </ul> |   |
| Troubleshooting                       | <b>Caution</b> Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disco<br>or parts damage may be occurred.  | nnect connector,  |
| Check No.23<br>Refer to P.211         | Is humidification NO<br>fan harness S72<br>connected?<br>YES<br>Rotate fan by hand<br>after removing it  | <ul> <li>Reconnect properly.</li> </ul>   |
|                                       | NO<br>Does it rotate smoothly?<br>YES <-Humidification fan><br>V<br>After assembling, run the fan<br>NO<br>Is fuse for<br>power supply of fan(FU2)<br>blown?   | <ul> <li>Replace hymidifying fan<br/>assembly.</li> <li>Replace outdoor fan,<br/>humidification fan, outdoor<br/>unit PCB.</li> </ul> |
|                                       | Does it rotate?<br>VES<br>Stop<br><others></others>  | <ul> <li>Replace outdoor unit PCB.</li> <li>Procedure complete.</li> </ul>  |
|                                       | Humidification fan>          Run the humidifying operation.         Image: Check No.23         Check No.23         Check for the rotation pulse input of outdoor unit PCB  | (R6019)   |

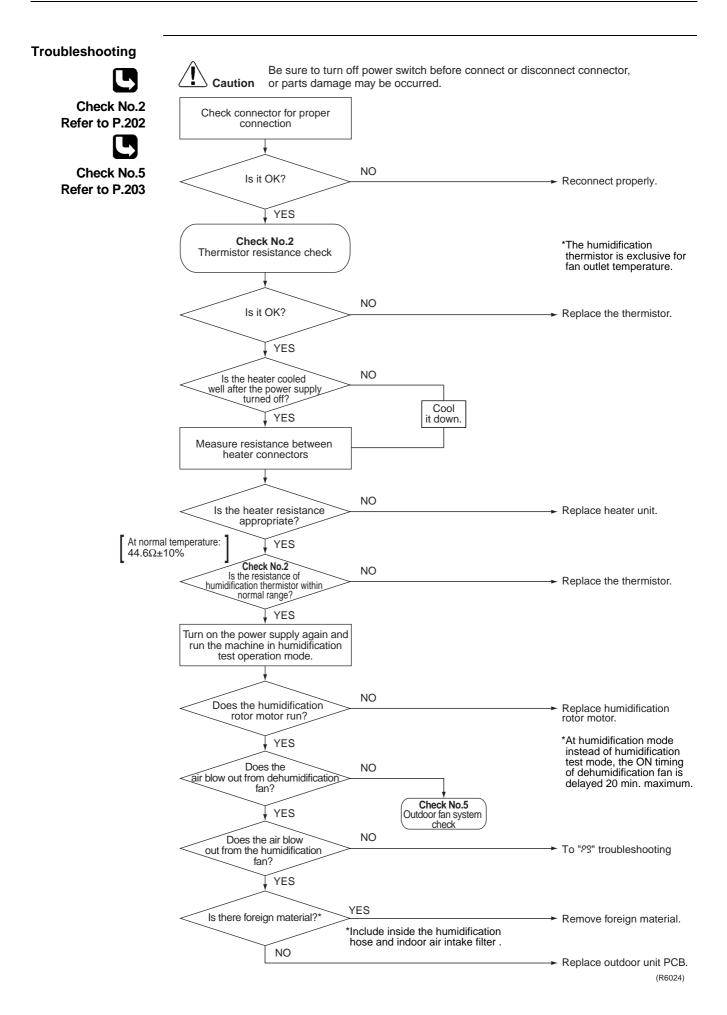
#### 2.38 Heater Wire Fault

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | 28  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓   |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | A fault is identified when the outlet temperature of humidification fan does not reach a certain temperature within a given time after the heater turned on.  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When the temperature detected by the thermistor is lower than the outdoor temperature (at heater turned off) + 6°C, and this condition continues for 30 min.  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Breakage of heater filament</li> <li>Breakage of heater harness</li> <li>Abnormal temperature detected by outdoor temperature thermistor</li> <li>Abnormal temperature detected by humidification fan outlet thermistor</li> <li>Damaged main relay</li> <li>Blown thermal fuse</li> <li>Damaged heater control part</li> <li>Extremely low voltage</li> </ul> |  |



#### 2.39 Humidification Fan Outlet Thermistor Fault / Abnormal Heater Temperature

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | PX  |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A\$↓ 5\$↓   |  |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | Detect short circuit and wire breakage of humidification thermistor.<br>When humidification fan outlet temperature becomes high, this condition is identified as an abnormal heater temperature fault.  |  |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions | When power is supplied and the thermistor input is 4.90 V or more, or 0.06 V or less.<br>If the humidification fan outlet temperature is more than 90°C, this condition is identified as<br>abnormal heater temperature fault.  |  |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Short circuit and wire breakage of humidification thermistor</li> <li>Disconnected connector</li> <li>Heater has a high power</li> <li>Thermistor temperature detection error</li> <li>Defective rotor motor</li> <li>Defective dehumidification fan motor</li> <li>Defective heater control part</li> <li>Defective humidification fan</li> </ul> |  |



# 2.40 Lights-out of Microcomputer Status Lamp

| Remote<br>Controller Display          | _   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Outdoor Unit LED<br>Display           | A● 5● (-)   |
| Method of<br>Malfunction<br>Detection | When a microcomputer fault is detected, LED A or LED 5 turns off.   |
| Malfunction<br>Decision<br>Conditions |   |
| Supposed<br>Causes                    | <ul> <li>Outdoor unit PCB is not power supplied</li> <li>Power supply failure due to noise</li> </ul>   |
| Troubleshooting                       |   |
|                                       | Image: Caution       Be sure to turn off power switch before connect or disconnect connector, or parts damage may be occurred.         Is correct power supplied?       NO         YES       "For the machine with stand-by power save function, first set the ON timer using remote controller to release the stand-by power save function.       "Do not work on or touch components other than specified part. (Doing so may cause a short circuit.)         Is LED A turned off?       Is LED 5 turned off?       Remove noises.         Is voltage       NO       YES       Replace outdoor unit PCB.         Is VIES       Is URD ?       YES       Replace outdoor unit PCB. |
|                                       | Dose the LED A flash?<br>VES<br>VES<br>NO<br>NO<br>Replace outdoor unit PCB.<br>Replace outdoor unit PCB.   |

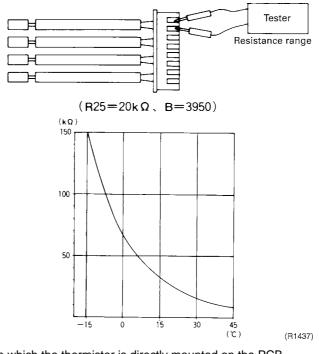
# **3. Check3.1 Thermistor Resistance Check**

Check No.2

Remove the connectors of the thermistors on the PCB, and measure the resistance of each thermistor using tester.

The relationship between normal temperature and resistance is shown in the graph and the table below.

| Thermistor       | R25°C=20kΩ B=3950 |
|------------------|-------------------|
| Temperature (°C) |                   |
| -20              | 211.0 (kΩ)        |
| -15              | 150               |
| -10              | 116.5             |
| -5               | 88                |
| 0                | 67.2              |
| 5                | 51.9              |
| 10               | 40                |
| 15               | 31.8              |
| 20               | 25                |
| 25               | 20                |
| 30               | 16                |
| 35               | 13                |
| 40               | 10.6              |
| 45               | 8.7               |
| 50               | 7.2               |

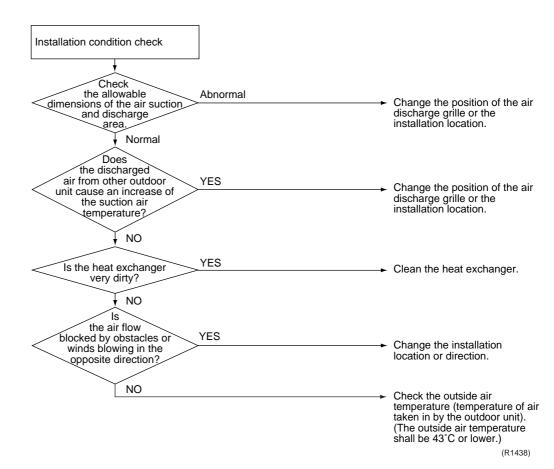


■ For the models in which the thermistor is directly mounted on the PCB.

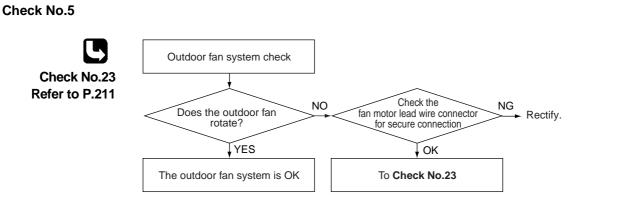


#### 3.2 Installation Condition Check

Check No.3



### 3.3 Outdoor Fan System Check (DC Motor)



(R3756)

#### **Power Supply Waveform Check** 3.4

Check No.8 Check the voltage waveform between power supply terminals on the terminal board for disturbance using oscillo-tester.

- Check to see if the power supply waveform is a sine wave (Fig.1).
- Check to see if there is waveform disturbance near the zero cross (sections circled in Fig.2)

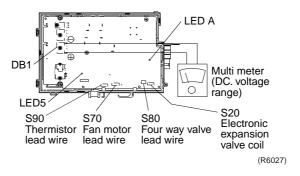
[Fig.1] (R1444) (R1736)

#### **Capacitor Voltage Check** 3.5

Check No.10

Before this checking, be sure to check the main circuit for short-circuit (Check No 29).

- Checking the capacitor voltage
- With the circuit breaker still on, measure the voltage according to the drawing of the model in • question. Be careful never to touch any live parts.

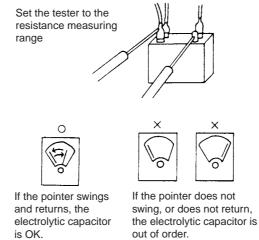


[Fig.2]

#### **Main Circuit Electrolytic Capacitor Check** 3.6

Check No.11

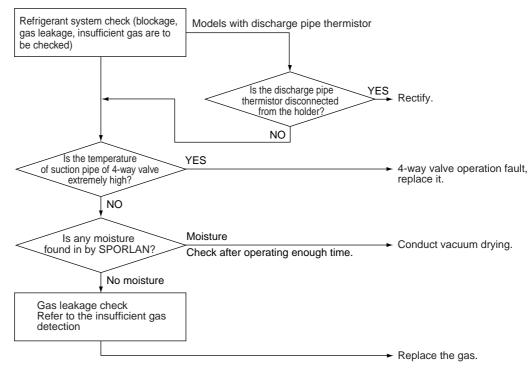
- Do not touch the live parts within 10 min. after the breaker is turned off.
- Even after that, when you touch the parts, check that there is no DC voltage with a tester.
- Check the conductivity with a tester. It is OK if the tester shows good conductivity when pins are replaced.



(R3466)

#### **Refrigerant System Check** 3.7

#### Check No.12



(R6022)

## 3.8 "Inverter Checker" Check

#### Check No.14

#### 1. Characteristics

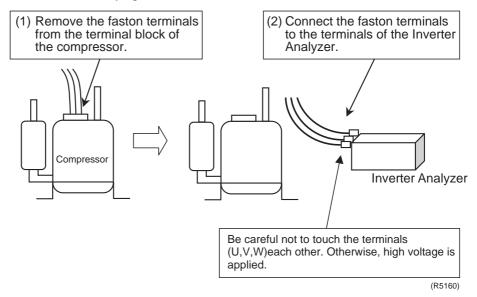
If abnormal stop occurs due to compressor startup failure or overcurrent output when using inverter unit, it is difficult to judge it results from the compressor failure or other failure (control PC board, power transistor, etc.). The inverter analyzer makes it possible to judge the cause of trouble easily and securely. (Connect this analyzer as a quasi compressor instead of compressor and check the output of inverter)

#### 2. Operation Method

1) Be sure to turn the power off.

2) Install the Inverter Analyzer instead of a compressor.

Note: Make sure the charged voltage of the built-in smoothing electrolytic capacitor drops to 10 VDC or below before carrying out the service work.



#### Reference

If the connector terminal of compressor is not a faston terminal (difficult to remove the wire on the terminal), it is possible to connect a wire available on site to the unit from output side of PC board. (Do not connect it to the compressor at the same time, otherwise it may result in incorrect detection.)

3) Turn the power on and operate the air conditioner.

## 3. Diagnose method (Diagnose can be made according to 6 LEDs lighting status as follows:)

- (1) When all LEDs are lit uniformly,  $\rightarrow$  Compressor malfunction (to be replaced)
- (2) When some of LEDs are not lit (LEDs are not lit or go off, etc.): Check the individual power transistor. (Refer to check No.15)
- \* When the power transistor and control PC board are integrated :  $\rightarrow$  Replace the control PC board.
- \* When the power transistor can be checked individually :  $\downarrow$  Check the resistance value. (Refer to check No.15)

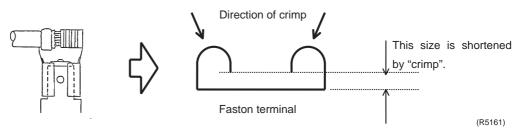
If NG :  $\rightarrow$  The power transistor may have a failure. (Replace the power transistor).

- If the power transistor is normal, check if there is any solder cracking on filter PC board.
   If any solder cracking is found: → Replace the filter PC board (or repair the soldered section).
- \* If filter PC board is normal:  $\rightarrow$  Replace the control PC board.

#### Caution

- When the output frequency is low, the LED flashes slowly. As the frequency increases, the LED flashes quickly. (It looks like the LED is lit)
- (2) If the operation is carried out with no load (the condition of the compressor is disconnected), some of units may stop operation with "CT system error" (due to no electric current) or "startup failure" (because the compressor does not turn). In this case, check if the LED is flashing during "operation" to "malfunction stop". (Refer to the service manual of each air conditioner for checking whether the alarm LEDs for CT system, startup failure, etc. are provided or not.)
- ③ On completion of diagnose by this checker, be sure to re-crimp the faston terminal for resetting the system.

(Otherwise, the terminal may be burned due to loosening.)



#### How to activate the inverter test mode

1) Hold the "CLOCK" button for 5 seconds.

(The matrix display will appear on the remote controller.)

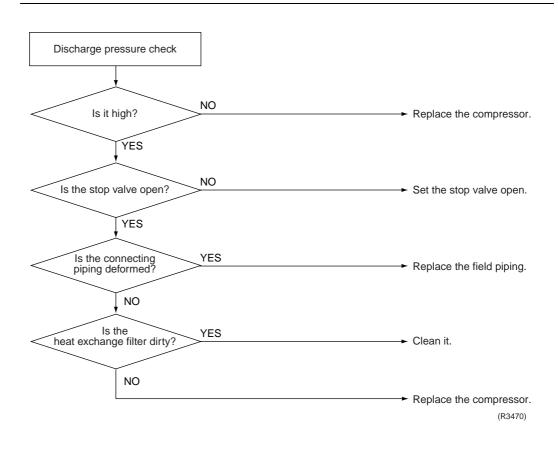
- 2) Display " **SETTING** " on the matrix display of the remote controller and press the "CLOCK" button.
- 3) "?" will be displayed.
- 4) Press the "CLEAN / FRESH" button for inverter test mode.

### 3.9 Power Transistor Check

- Do not touch the live parts within 10 min. after the breaker is turned off.
- Even after that, when you touch the parts, check to see that supply voltage of the power transistor is less than 50 V with a tester.
- Measure resistance at connector terminal on PCB or at the relay connector.

| (-) terminal of a tester | Power transistor<br>(+)                | UVW                     | Power transistor<br>(–) | UVW                     |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (+) terminal of a tester | UVW                                    | Power transistor<br>(+) | UVW                     | Power transistor<br>(–) |
| Resistance in OK         | several k $\Omega$ ~several M $\Omega$ |                         |                         |                         |
| Resistance in NG         | 0 or ∞                                 |                         |                         |                         |

## 3.10 Discharge Pressure Check

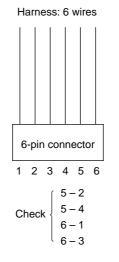


## 3.11 Electronic Expansion Valve Check

Check No.17

Check the electronic expansion valve (EV) as follows:

- 1. Check if the EV connector properly inserted into the control PCB. Collate the number of EV main body with that of the connector.
- 2. Check to see that clatter (latching sound) is heard from all of the EVs when turning on the power supply again after turning it off.
- 3. If there are EVs which do not sound clatter, disconnect the connectors of these EVs and check them for conductivity.



4. If there is no clatter (latching sound) on all of the EVs in step 2, the outdoor PCB is defective.

(R6028)

5. For EVs for which conductivity is established in step 3, connect the coil which sounded clatter to the EV main body which did not sound, and make sure the latching sound be heard again.

If latching sound is heard, outdoor unit PCB is defective. If there is no latching sound, the EV main body is defective.



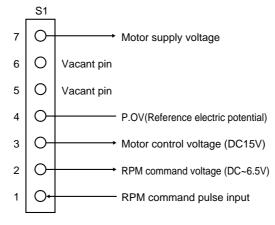
Latching sound varies by each valve.

## 3.12 Indoor Unit PCB Output Check

#### Check No.18

<Control PCB (A1P)>

- 1. Check for proper connection.
- 2. Check that the supply voltage applied to the motor is output between No.4 pin and No.7 pin).
- 3. Check that the motor control voltage is output (between No.3 pin and No.4 pin).
- Check that the rpm command voltage is output (between No.2 pin and No.4 pin).



(R4023)

## 3.13 Rotating Pulse Input on Outdoor Unit PCB Check

#### Check No.23

#### < For propeller fan motor or humidification fan>

Make sure voltage of  $270 \pm 30$  V is applied.

- 1. Set power ON and operation OFF. Remove connector S70 or S72.
- 2. Check that the voltage between No. 4 pin and No.7 pin is 270 VDC.
- 3. Check that the control voltage between No. 3 pin and No. 4 pin is 15 VDC.
- 4. Check that the RPM command voltage between No. 2 pin and No. 4 pin is 5 VDC.
- 5. Set power OFF and operation OFF. Connect connector S70 or S72.
- Check whether two pulses (0 15 V) are input at No. 1 pin and No. 4 pin when the fan motor is rotated 1 turn by hand.

Fuses are commonly used as follows. Refer to the corresponding circuit diagram.

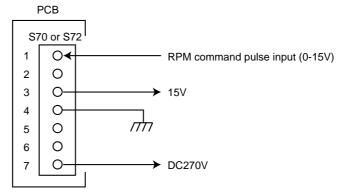
| FU1 | SW power supply<br>4-way valve<br>Hygroscopic fan |
|-----|---|
| FU2 | Outdoor fan<br>Humidification fan                 |

When FU2 is melted, check outdoor fan for proper function.

If NG in step 2  $\rightarrow$  Defective PCB  $\rightarrow$  Replace the PCB.

If NG in step 4  $\rightarrow$  Defective Hall IC  $\rightarrow$  Replace the DC fan motor.

If OK in both steps 2 and 4  $\rightarrow$  Replace the PCB.



(R3477)

Propeller fan motor: S70, Humidification fan motor: S72

#### <For Hygroscopic fan>

Check that the connectors HK1, HK2, HK3 for proper connection.

- 1. Check that the supply voltage between HK1 and HK3 is 5VDC. \*Check when the machine is not in suspend mode.
- 2. If NG in step 1  $\rightarrow$  Defective PCB  $\rightarrow$  Replace the PCB.

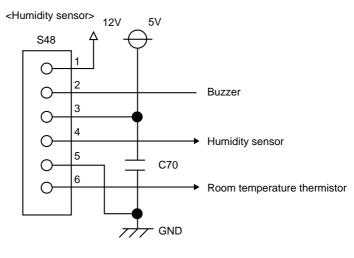
| FU1 | SW power supply<br>4-way valve<br>Hygroscopic fan |
|-----|---|
| FU2 | Outdoor fan<br>Humidification fan                 |

Therefore, when the FU2 is melted, check rotor motor for proper function.

## 3.14 Humidity Sensor Check

#### Check No.27

- 1. Check for proper connection.
- 2. Check sensor input level (\*1).
- Change <u>ambient conditions</u> (\*2) and check that input level changes accordingly.
   \*1 Input level varies depending on the sensor.
  - \*2 Changes in humidity, temperature, air flow rate. To do this, merely breathe upon.



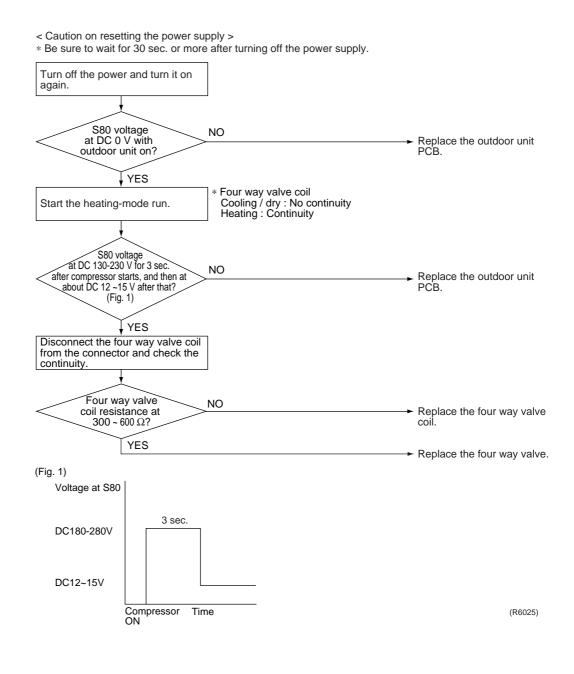
(R6023)

## 3.15 Main Circuit Short Check

- Measure the resistance between pins at both ends of DB1.
- If the resistance is  $\infty$  or less than 1 k $\Omega$ , the main circuit short.

| <ul> <li>(-) terminal of the tester</li> <li>(in case of digital,</li> <li>(+) terminal)</li> </ul> | (~)                                       | (+) | (~) | ()                        |
|---|---|-----|-----|---------------------------|
| <ul> <li>(+) terminal of the tester</li> <li>(in case of digital,</li> <li>(-) terminal)</li> </ul> | (+)                                       | (~) | ()  | (~)                       |
| Resistance in OK  | several k $\Omega$<br>~several M $\Omega$ | 8   | 8   | several kΩ<br>~several MΩ |
| Resistance in NG  | 0 or ∞                                    | 0   | 0   | 0 or ∞                    |

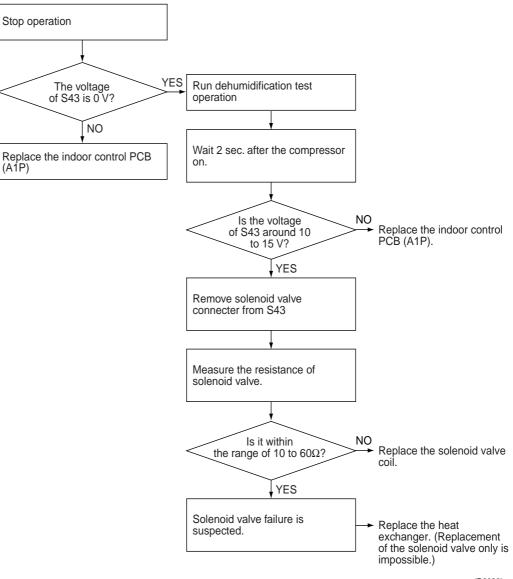
## 3.16 Four-way Valve Performance Check



## 3.17 Solenoid Valve for Dehumidification Check

#### Check No.32

Faulty criterion: In dehumidification test operation mode, PCB is identified as a faulty when the solenoid valve does not turn on within 2 sec. after compressor start-up. (When reheating dehumidifying is not used, the operation mode is similar to cooling operation.)



(R6026)

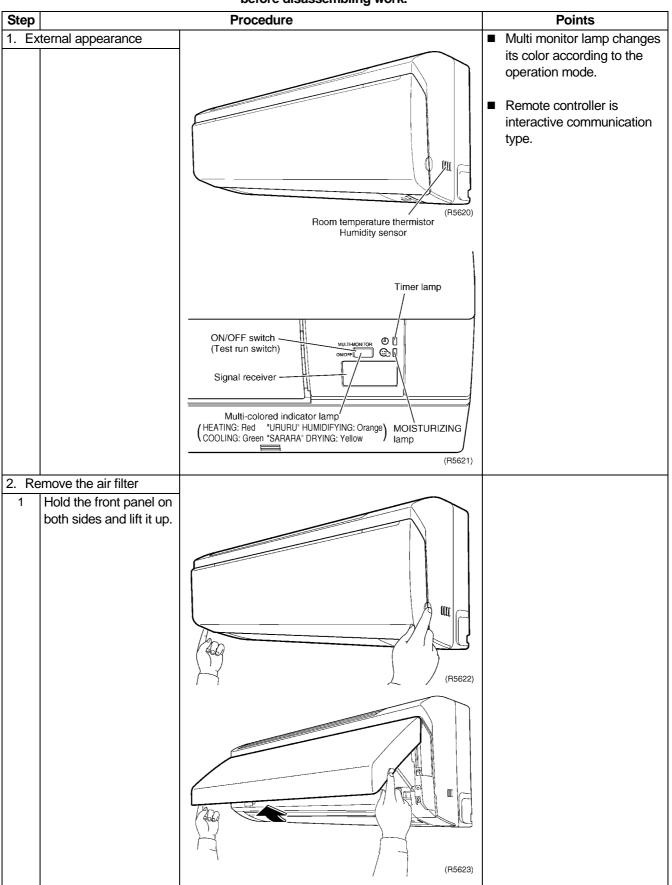
## Part 7 Removal Procedure

| 1. | Indo  | or Unit   | 216   |
|----|---|---|---|
|    | 1.1   | Removal of the Air Filters / Front panel  | 216   |
|    | 1.2   | Removal of the Upper Panel  | 222   |
|    | 1.3   | Removal of the Front Grille   | 225   |
|    | 1.4   | Removal of the Assembly of the Open/Close Mechanism   | 228   |
|    | 1.5   | Removal of the Assembly of the Reduction Motor  | 230   |
|    | 1.6   | Removal of the Electrical Box   | 233   |
|    | 1.7   | Removal of the PCB  | 238   |
|    | 1.8   | Removal of the Dehumidifying Solenoid Valve Coil  | 244   |
|    | 1.9   | Removal of the Connecting Duct  | 245   |
|    | 1.10  | Removal of the Drain Hose   | 247   |
|    | 1.11  | Removal of the Swing Motor  | 249   |
|    | 1.12  | Removal of the Heat Exchanger   | 251   |
|    | 1.13  | Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor  | 254   |
|    | 1.14  | Removal of Horizontal Blades / Vertical Blades  | 257   |
|    | 1.15  | Removal of the Streamer Unit  | 259   |
|    |   |   |   |
| 2. | Outd  | oor Unit  | 263   |
| 2. | Outd<br>2.1   | loor Unit<br>Removal of the Humidify Unit   |   |
| 2. |   |   |   |
| 2. | 2.1   | Removal of the Humidify Unit  | 263   |
| 2. | 2.1   | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor  | 263<br>266  |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2  | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor   | 263<br>266<br>270   |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3   | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273  |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4  | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274   |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4<br>2.5   | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>279  |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4<br>2.5<br>2.6  | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier   | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>279<br>280   |
| 2. | <ul> <li>2.1</li> <li>2.2</li> <li>2.3</li> <li>2.4</li> <li>2.5</li> <li>2.6</li> <li>2.7</li> </ul>                           | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier<br>Removal of the Electrical Box  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>279<br>280<br>284                                    |
| 2. | <ul> <li>2.1</li> <li>2.2</li> <li>2.3</li> <li>2.4</li> <li>2.5</li> <li>2.6</li> <li>2.7</li> <li>2.8</li> <li>2.9</li> </ul> | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the PCB  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>279<br>280<br>284<br>287                             |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4<br>2.5<br>2.6<br>2.7<br>2.8<br>2.9<br>2.10<br>2.11   | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the PCB<br>Removal of the Sound Blanket<br>Removal of the Sound Blanket<br>Removal of the Reactor / Partition Plate | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>280<br>280<br>284<br>289<br>289<br>291               |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4<br>2.5<br>2.6<br>2.7<br>2.8<br>2.9<br>2.10<br>2.11   | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the PCB<br>Removal of the Sound Blanket<br>Remove the Thermistor Assembly  | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>280<br>280<br>284<br>289<br>289<br>291               |
| 2. | 2.1<br>2.2<br>2.3<br>2.4<br>2.5<br>2.6<br>2.7<br>2.8<br>2.9<br>2.10<br>2.11<br>2.12<br>2.13                                     | Removal of the Humidify Unit<br>Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor<br>(Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor<br>Removal of the Humidifying Assembly<br>Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor<br>Removal of the Duct in Humidifier<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the Electrical Box<br>Removal of the PCB<br>Removal of the Sound Blanket<br>Removal of the Sound Blanket<br>Removal of the Reactor / Partition Plate | 263<br>266<br>270<br>273<br>274<br>279<br>280<br>284<br>287<br>289<br>291<br>292<br>294 |

# Indoor Unit Removal of the Air Filters / Front panel

Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

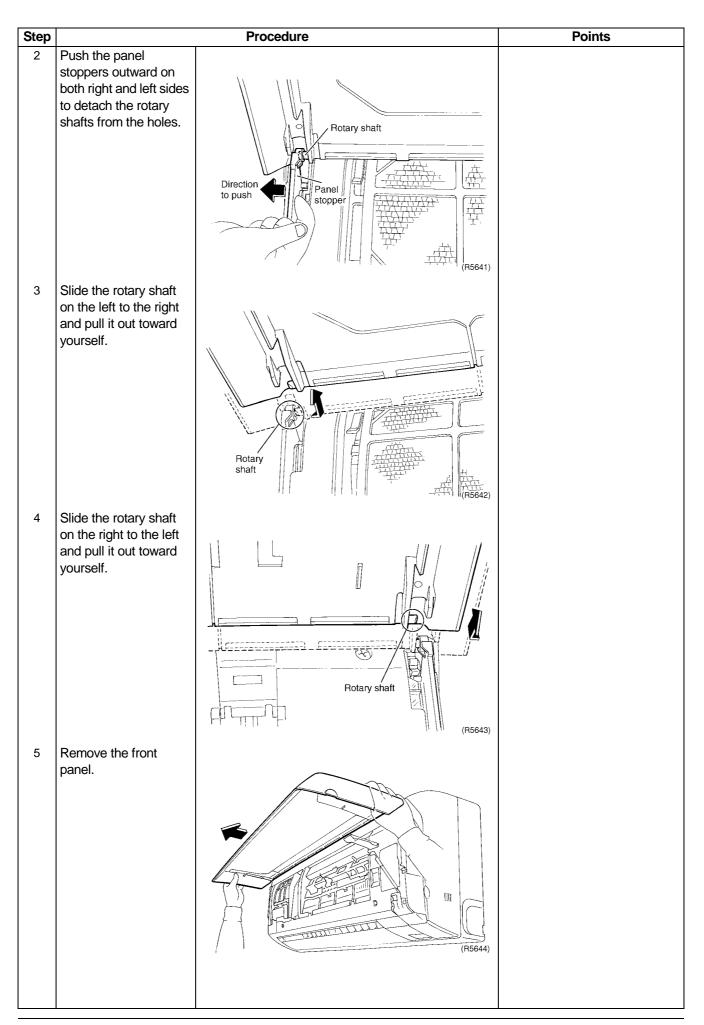


| Step |  | Procedure                            | Points   |
|------|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| 2    | Keep the front panel   | Support point                        |  |
|      | open with the support plate.   | Support                              |  |
|      |  | (R5624)                              |  |
| 3    | Push the center part of<br>the air filter up to undo<br>the 2 hooks. | Hooks<br>Hooks<br>I Coole<br>(R5625) |  |
| 4    | Remove the air filter toward yourself.                               |                                      |  |
|      |  | (R5626)                              |  |
| 5    | The shapes of the right<br>and left filters are<br>different.        |                                      |  |
|      |  | (R5627)                              | Insert the filters along with<br>the guide for easy<br>installation. |
|      |  |                                      |  |
|      |  |                                      | (R5628)  |

| Step  |   | Procedure     | Points  |
|-------|---|---------------|---|
| 3. Re | emove the deodorizing   |               |   |
| filt  | er for streamer   |               |   |
| 1     | Pull the center knob to<br>undo the hook.                           | F5629)        |   |
| 2     | Pull out the deodorizing<br>filter for streamer<br>toward yourself. | (R5630)       |   |
| 3     | Undo the 3 hooks on<br>the longitudinal<br>direction.               | Hooks (R5631) | In cleaning, keep the filter<br>with the frame for<br>prevention of breakage. |
| 4     | Slide the filter toward<br>yourself to remove.                      | (F5632)       |   |

| Step  |   | Procedure  | Points   |
|-------|---|--|--|
|       | move the streamer unit  |  |  |
| 1     | Pull down the streamer<br>unit with holding the<br>knob.  |  |  |
| 5. Re | move the titanium   |  |  |
| ap    | atite photocatalytic air  |  |  |
|       | rifying filter  |  |  |
| 1     | Undo the projection of<br>the frame of titanium<br>apatite photocatalytic<br>air purifying filter and<br>remove it. | (R5634)  |  |
| 2     | Undo the 4 hooks,   | Guides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cuides<br>Cu | Insert the filters along with<br>the guide for easy<br>installation. |
| 2     | open the frame, and<br>remove the titanium<br>apatite photocatalytic<br>air purifying filter.                       | Hooks<br>Hooks<br>(R5636)  |  |

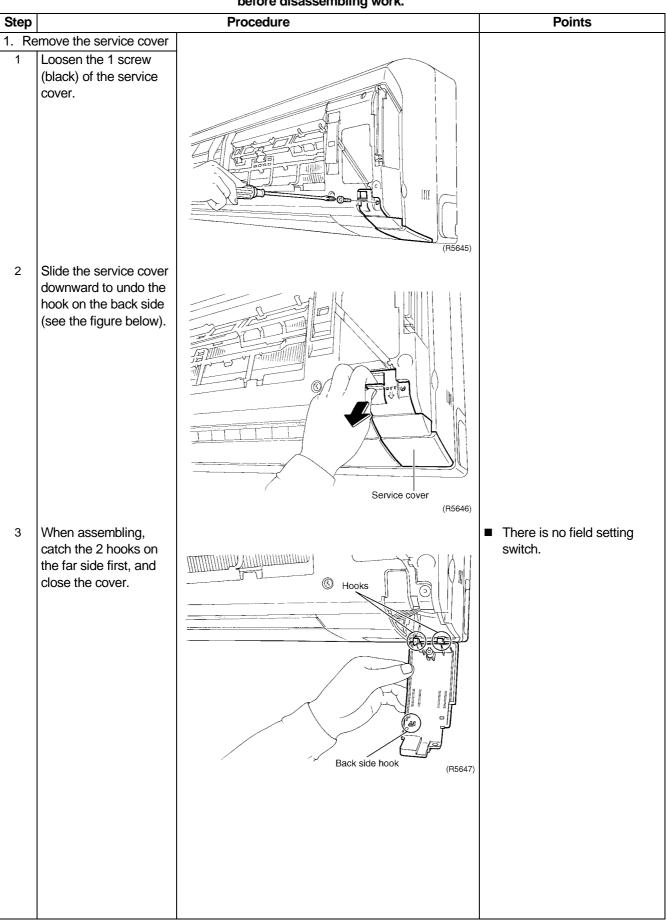
| Step       |  | Procedure | Points   |
|------------|--|-----------|--|
|            |  |           |  |
|            | move the air supply  |           | Insert the filters along with<br>these title for each of the second seco |
| filte<br>1 | er<br>Lift the air supply filter   |           | the guide for easy installation.   |
| 2          | up to take out.<br>Undo the lower 2 hooks<br>of the air supply filter<br>and open the frame. |           | <ul> <li>Install the air supply filter correctly so that the "Front" mark comes front.</li> <li>Humidifying operation without installing the air supply filter will form condensation inside the panel and it causes water leakage.</li> <li>There are 4 hooks for the air supply filter.</li> </ul>   |
| 7. Re      | move the front panel<br>Open the front panel<br>further than the<br>stopping position.       |           |  |



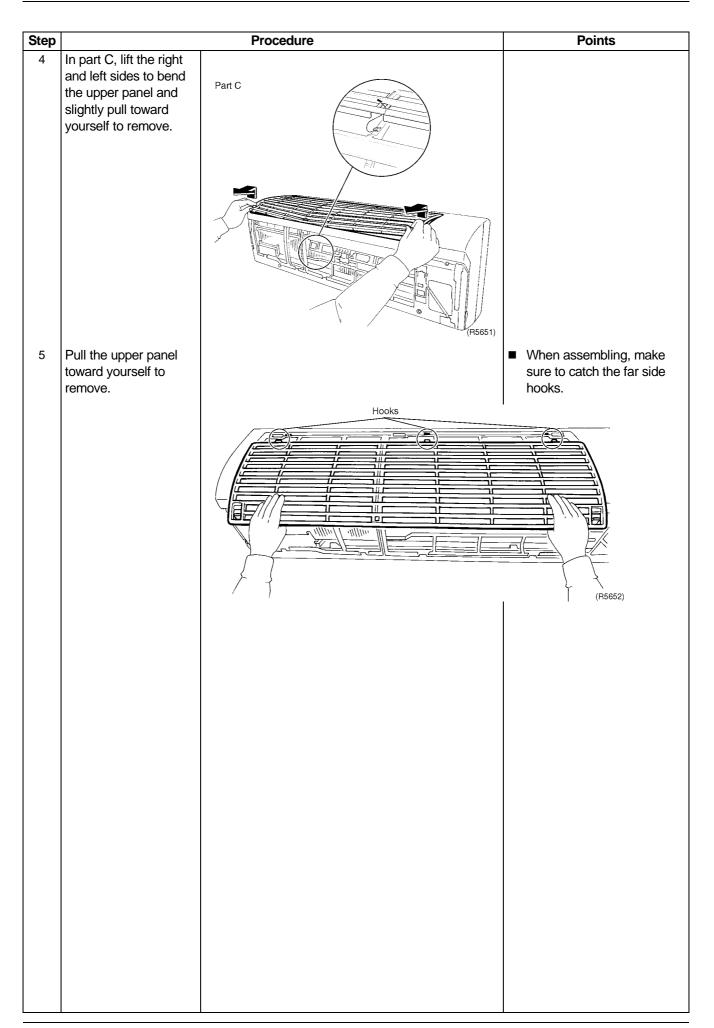
## **1.2 Removal of the Upper Panel**

#### Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



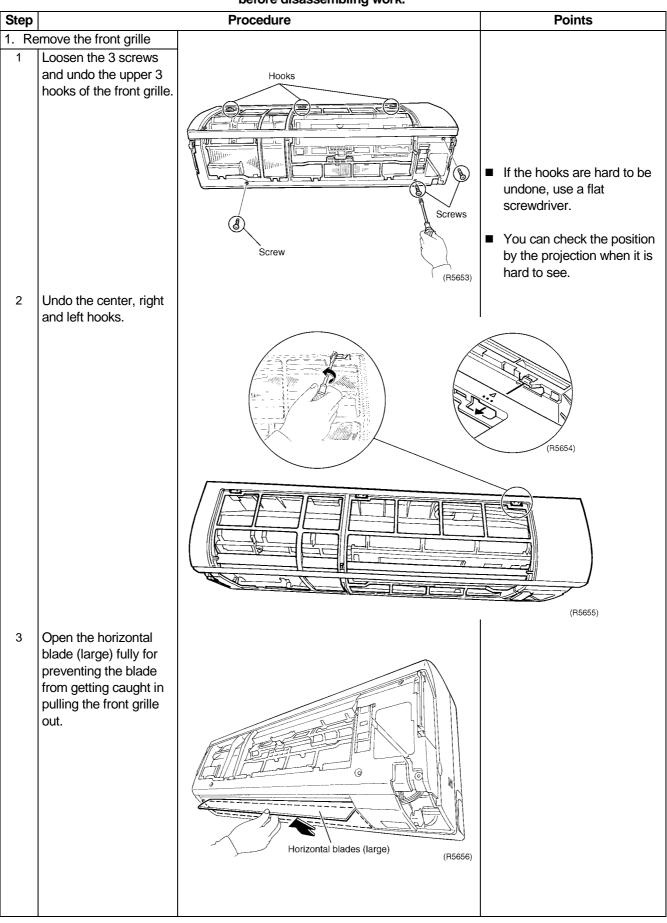
| Step  | Procedure   | Points           |
|---|---|------------------|
| 2. Remove the upper panel   |   |                  |
| 1 Undo the 3 hooks of the upper panel.                                  | Part A  | Art B<br>(R5648) |
| 2 In part A, pinch the<br>upper hook, undo the<br>hook, and lift it up. | Part A  |                  |
| 3 In part B, undo the<br>hook as in part A, and<br>lift it up.          | Par B         Image: Constrained and the second and te |                  |



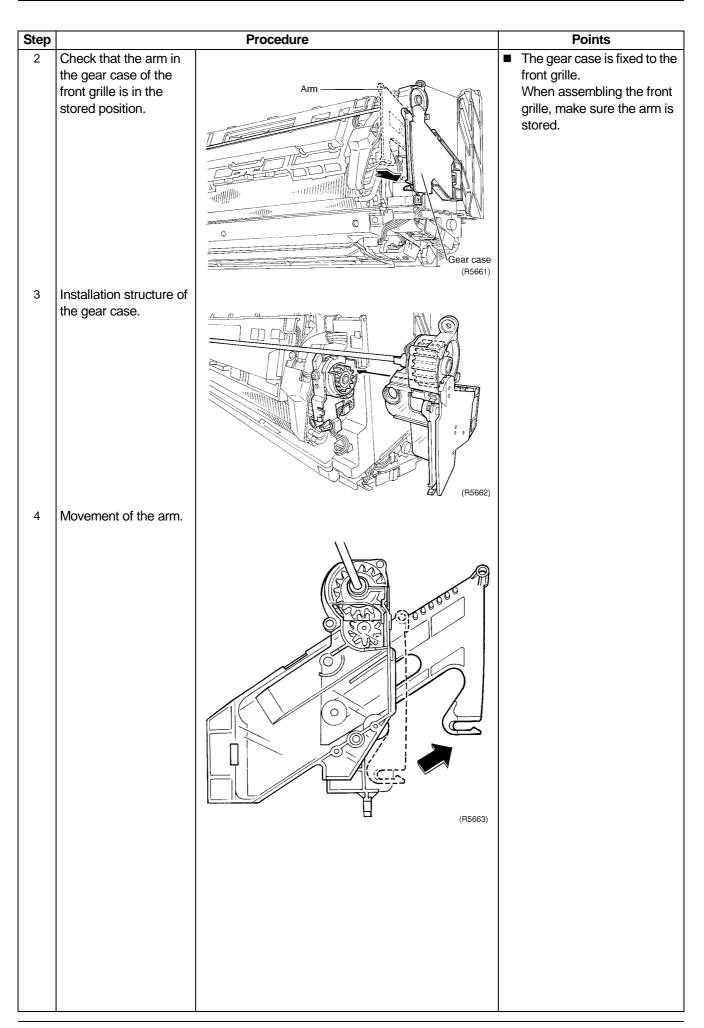
## 1.3 Removal of the Front Grille



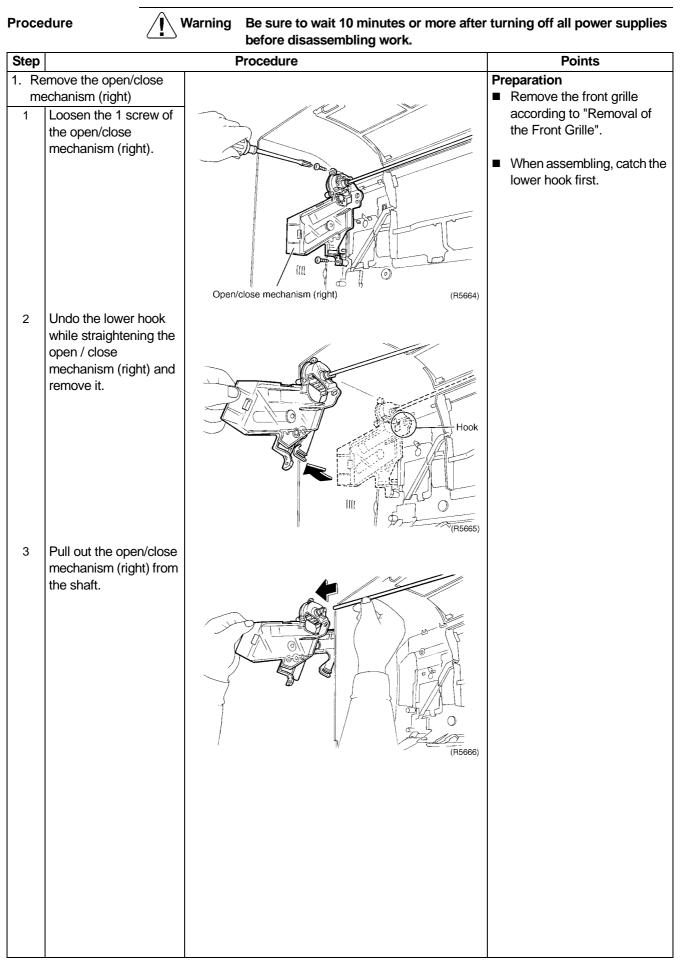
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step     |   | Procedure          | Points   |
|----------|---|--------------------|--|
| 4        | Slide the front grille<br>toward yourself to<br>remove.   |                    |  |
| 2. Ho    | w to install the front  |                    | Points on installing   |
| gri<br>1 | lle<br>When assembling the<br>front grille, fit the 4<br>lower hooks and push<br>in until a click is heard. | (R5658)            | <ul> <li>When assembling, make sure that the horizontal blade (large) does not come inside.</li> <li>When assembling, follow the same steps for removal in reverse.</li> </ul> |
| 3. Fe    | atures of the gear case   |                    | There is no mark for fitting   |
| 1        | There is a gear<br>assembly for front<br>panel driving.   | Gear guard (F5660) | the gear.  |



## 1.4 Removal of the Assembly of the Open/Close Mechanism

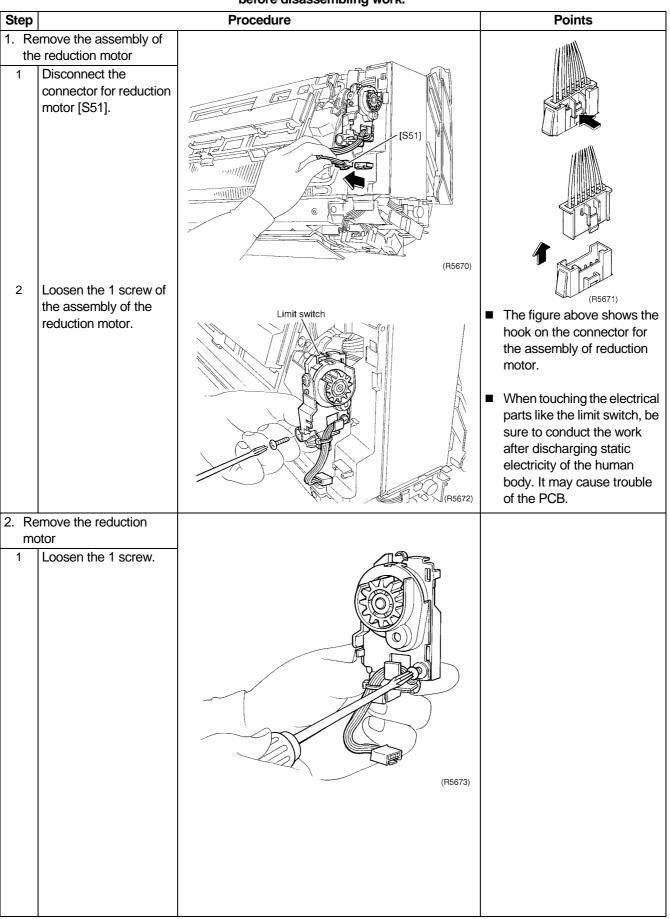


| Step  |   | Procedure                                    | Points   |
|-------|---|--|--|
| 2. Re | emove the open/close  |  |  |
| 1     | echanism (left)<br>Pull out the shaft from<br>the open/close<br>mechanism (left). |  |  |
| 2     | Loosen the 2 screws of<br>the open/close<br>mechanism (left).                     | Open/close<br>mechanism<br>(left)<br>(R5667) | <ul> <li>Service part is obtained as<br/>an assembly kit.</li> </ul> |
|       |   | (R5668)                                      |  |
| 3     | Remove the open/<br>close mechanism (left).                                       | (P5669)                                      |  |
|       |   |  |  |

## 1.5 Removal of the Assembly of the Reduction Motor

#### Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



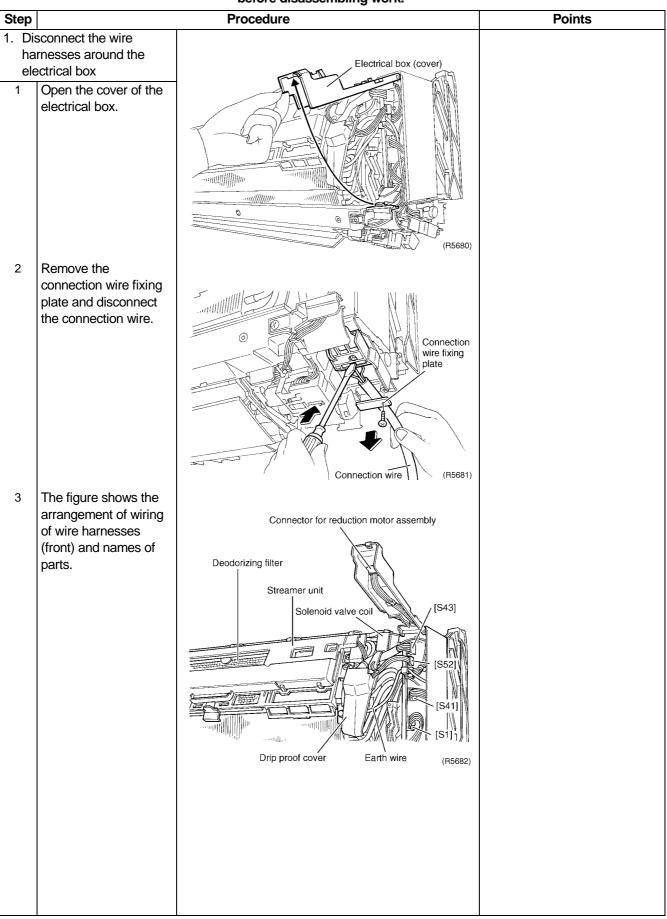
| Step |  | Procedure       | Points |
|------|--|-----------------|--------|
| 2    | Cut the clamp.   |                 |        |
|      |  | (F5674)         |        |
| 3    | Slide the cover to the   |                 |        |
|      | right to undo the hook.  | Hook<br>(R5675) |        |
| 4    | Lift the cover of the<br>gear case of the<br>reduction motor up<br>slightly to undo the<br>upper hook, and<br>remove it. | Hook<br>(R5676) |        |
|      |  |                 |        |

| Step |   | Procedure | Points  |
|------|---|-----------|---|
| 5    | Pull the gear out to<br>remove. Loosen the 1<br>screw of the reduction<br>motor.    | (R5677)   |   |
| 6    | Turn the assembly over<br>and detach the sealing<br>tape of the reduction<br>motor. | (R5678)   |   |
| 7    | Undo the 2 hooks of<br>the limit switch.  | Hoks      | The connector of the reduction motor can be disconnected. |

## 1.6 Removal of the Electrical Box

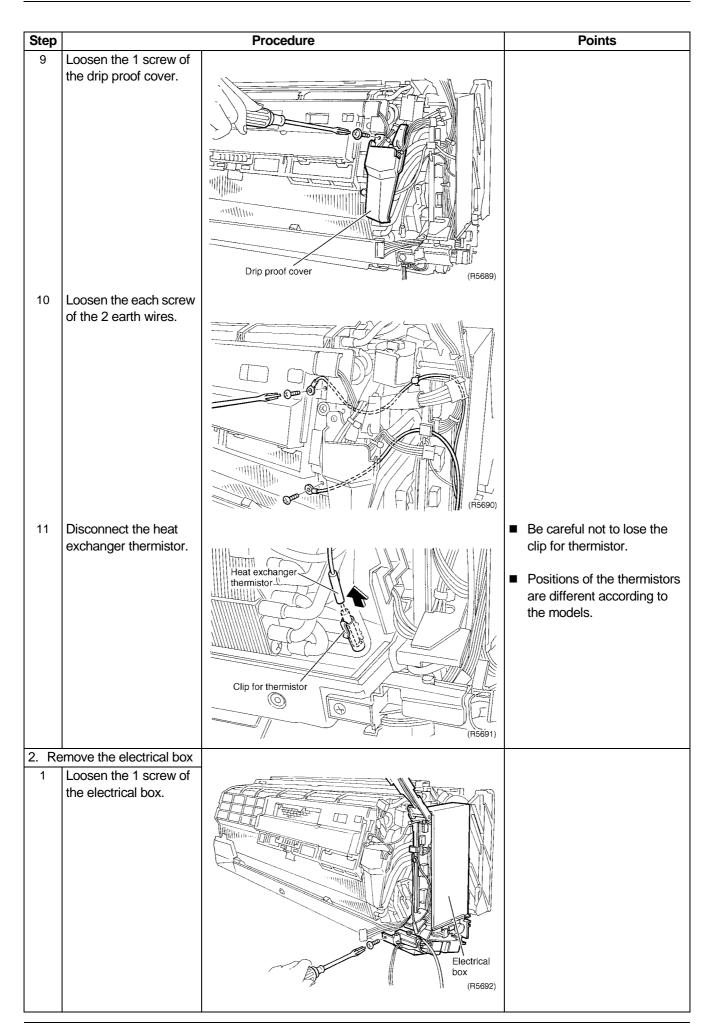


Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step |  | Procedure  | Points |
|------|--|--|--------|
| 4    | The figure shows the<br>arrangement of wiring<br>of wire harnesses<br>(under) and names of<br>parts. | Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook         |        |
| 5    | Disconnect the<br>connector for<br>dehumidifying solenoid<br>valve [S43].                            | Connector for<br>dehumidifying<br>solenoid valve<br>[S43]<br>(F5684) |        |
| 6    | Disconnect the<br>connector for streamer<br>unit [S52].  |  |        |

| Step |  | Procedure                               | Points   |
|------|--|---|--|
| 7    | Disconnect the<br>connector for swing<br>motor [S41].                      | [S41]<br>[S41]<br>(P5686)               | The connector [S41] is for<br>both horizontal blades and<br>vertical blades. |
| 8    | Disconnect the<br>connector for fan motor<br>[S1], and undo the 1<br>hook. | Connector for fan motor<br>[S1] (P5687) |  |
|      |  | Hook<br>(R5688)                         |  |
|      |  |   |  |

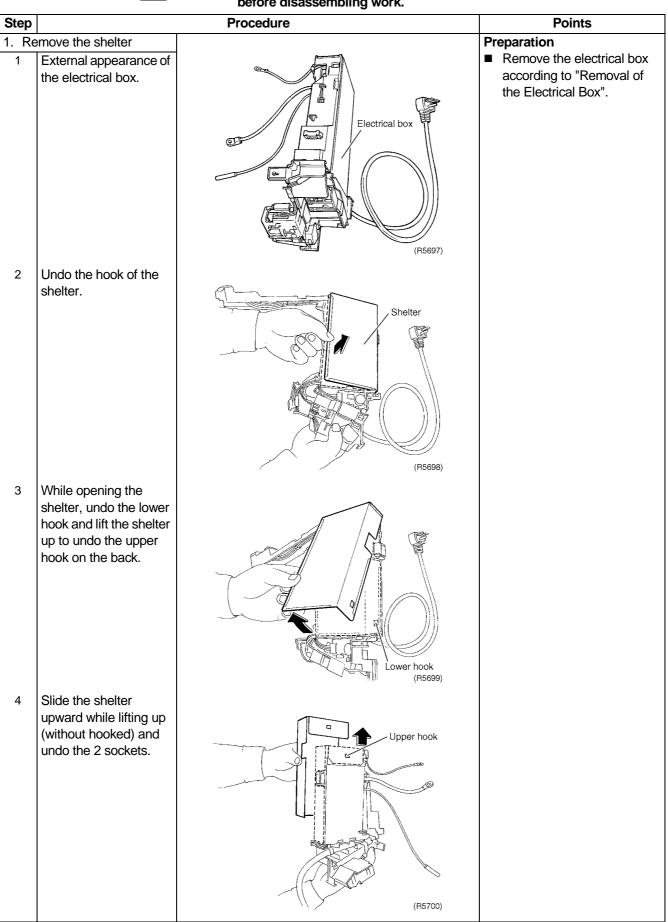


| Step |   | Procedure | Points  |
|------|---|-----------|---|
| 2    | Close the cover and slide to undo the hook in the key hole.                                   |           |   |
|      |   |           |   |
| 3    | Push up the bottom<br>side of the electrical<br>box, or push the bottom<br>frame to the back. |           |   |
| 4    | Undo the upper hook<br>first.   | (R5694)   |   |
| 5    | The shapes of the hook  | (R5695)   | <ul> <li>When assembling, insert</li> </ul>                                 |
|      | on back side.   | (F5696)   | the upper hook, push<br>slightly, and make sure to<br>catch the lower hook. |

## 1.7 Removal of the PCB

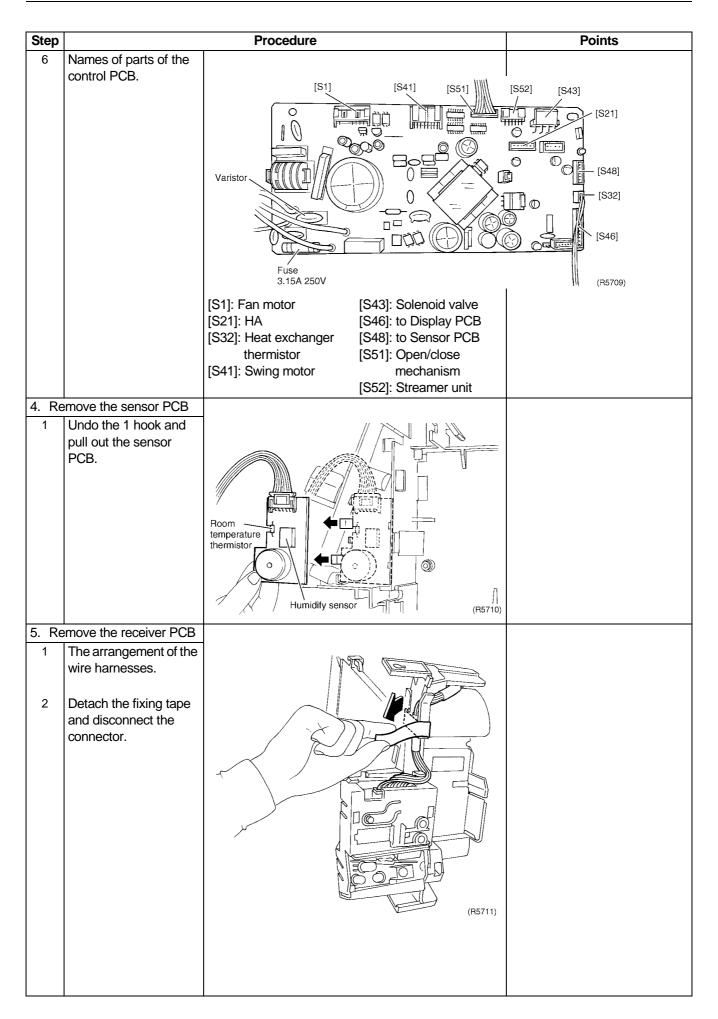
Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step  |  | Procedure                        | Points   |
|-------|--|----------------------------------|--|
|       | move the power supply  |                                  |  |
|       | minal board<br>Loosen the 1 screw<br>and pull out the<br>terminal board<br>sideward.   | (B5701)                          |  |
| 2     | Disconnect the red<br>terminal with pliers and<br>black and white<br>terminals with a flat<br>screwdrivers on the<br>terminal board. | Black<br>White<br>Red<br>(R5702) | Black (1) Power supply<br>White (2) Power supply<br>Red (3) Signal |
| 3. Re | move the control PCB   |                                  | <ul> <li>Clamps should be used all</li> </ul>                      |
| 2     | Cut the 3 clamps.<br>Undo the earth wire<br>from the hook.   | (F5703)                          | the time.<br>Fix it as it was before.                              |
|       |  | (R5704)                          |  |

| Step |  | Procedure                               | Points                          |
|------|--|---|---------------------------------|
| 3    | Disconnect the                         |   | [S46]: to the display PCB [S56] |
|      | connectors [S46] and                   |   | [S48]: to the sensor PCB [CN1]  |
|      | [S48].                                 | (F5705)                                 |                                 |
| 4    | Push out the connector                 |   |                                 |
|      | for reduction motor                    |   |                                 |
|      | mechanism while pinching the connector |   |                                 |
|      | from the back side of                  |   |                                 |
|      | the electrical box                     |   |                                 |
|      | cover.                                 |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  | Connector for reduction motor mechanism |                                 |
|      |  | (R5707)                                 |                                 |
| 5    | Loosen the 2 screws                    |   |                                 |
| Ū    | and remove the control                 |   |                                 |
|      | PCB.                                   |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  | - TES                                   |                                 |
|      |  | (R5708)                                 |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |
|      |  |   |                                 |



| Step |                      | Procedure  | Points   |
|------|----------------------|--|--|
|      |                      | (B5712)  |  |
| 3    | Undo the upper hook. |  | <ul> <li>Using a flat screwdriver<br/>makes it easy to undo the</li> </ul> |
| 4    | Undo the lower hook. | Upper<br>Hook<br>Lower hook<br>(R5713)   | hook.  |
|      |                      | OV/OFF switch<br>Multi-colored<br>indicator lamp<br>Transmitter<br>Receiver<br>(R5714) |  |
|      |                      |  |  |

| Step |  | Procedure | Points   |
|------|--|-----------|--|
| 5    | Undo the 3 hooks of<br>the receiver PCB. | Procedure | <ul> <li>Points</li> <li>The receiver PCB and the display PCB are united.</li> </ul> |
|      |  |           |  |
|      |  |           |  |

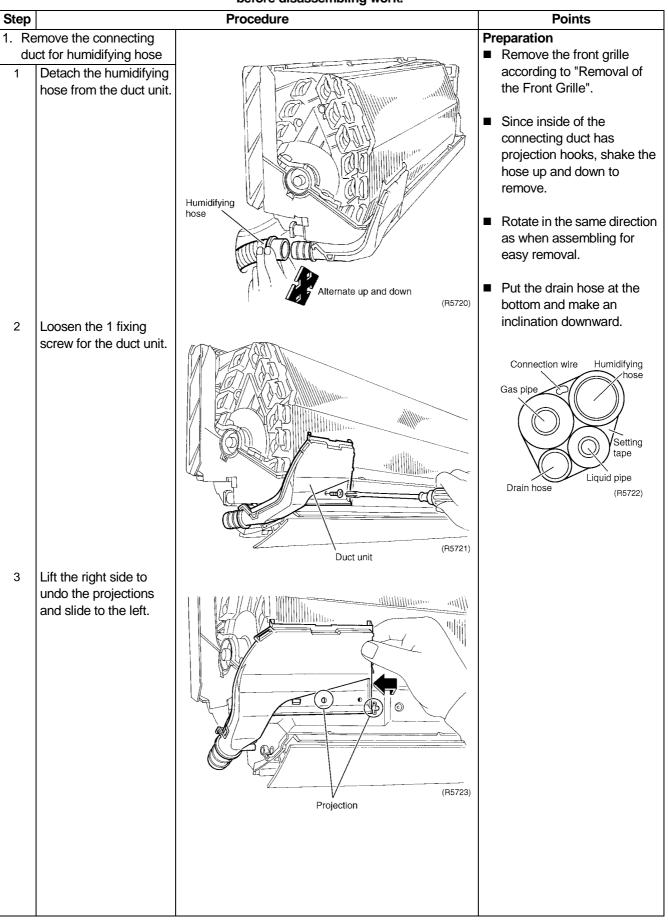
## 1.8 Removal of the Dehumidifying Solenoid Valve Coil

#### Procedure Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies Warning before disassembling work. Step **Points** Procedure Detach the lead wire Preparation 1 Remove the front grille from the drip proof Dehumidifying solenoid valve coil according to "Removal of cover. the Front Grille". oung (R5717) 2 Disconnect the connector for dehumidifying solenoid valve [S43]. Connector for dehumidifying solenoid valve coil [S43] Шh (R5718) 3 Pull the dehumidifying Solenoid valve does not solenoid valve coil to need screws. remove. EEE, (R5719)

### 1.9 Removal of the Connecting Duct



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

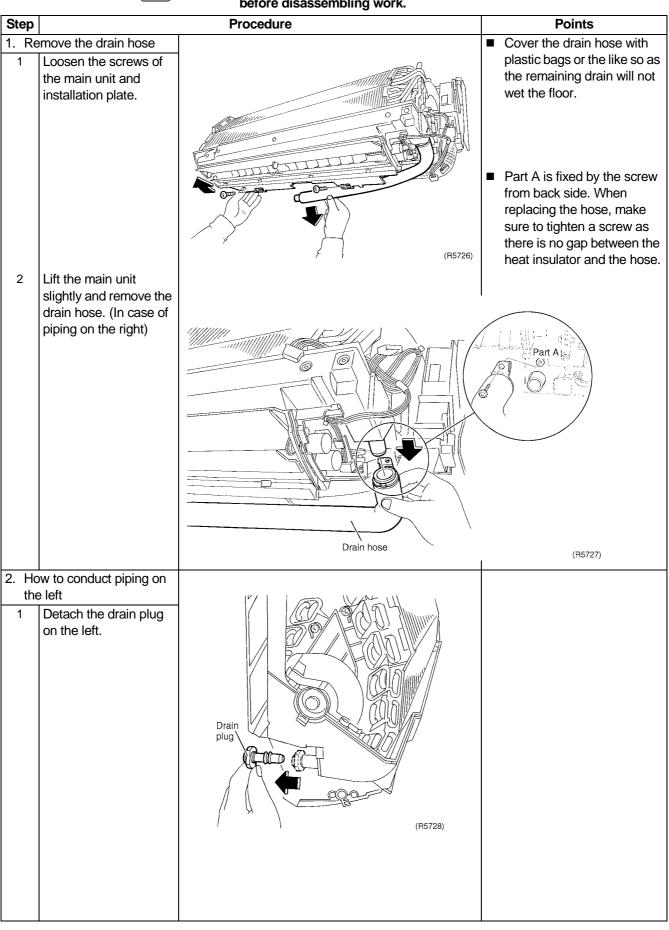


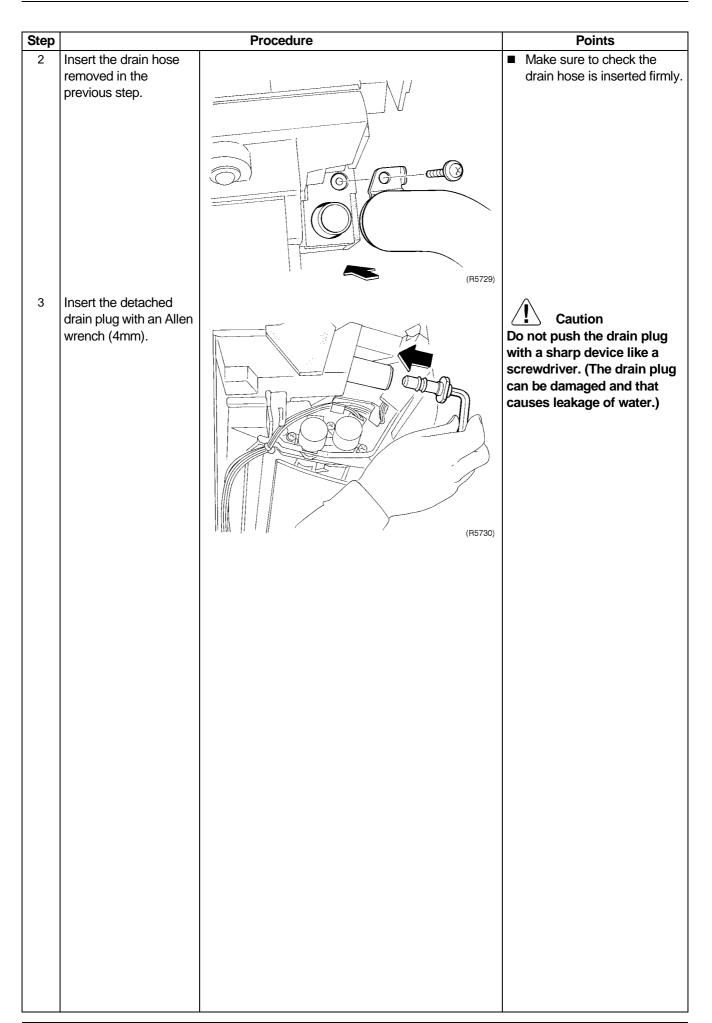
| Step |  | Procedure    | Points |
|------|--|--------------|--------|
| 4    | Slide the duct unit  |              |        |
|      | upward to remove.  | Hook (B5724) |        |
| 5    | When assembling,<br>make sure to insert into<br>the fixing hole. | (R5724)      |        |
|      |  |              |        |

#### 1.10 Removal of the Drain Hose



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

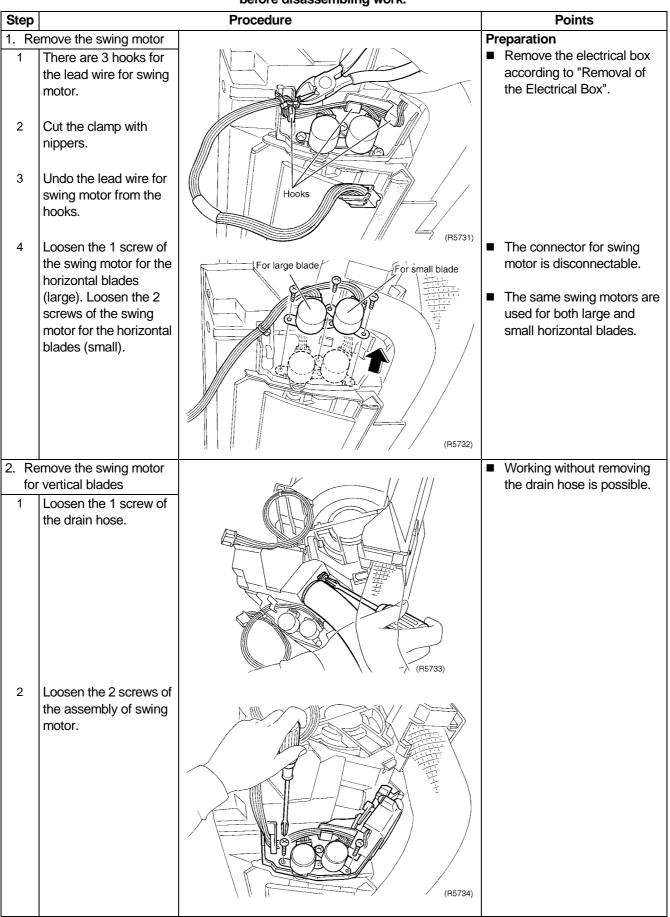


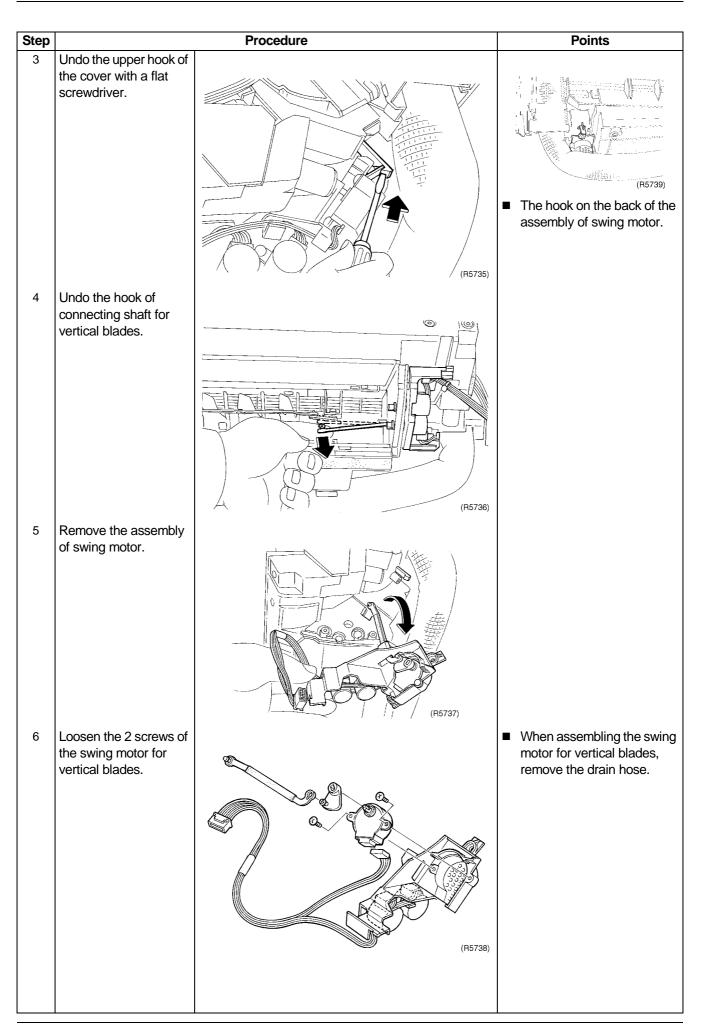


#### 1.11 Removal of the Swing Motor



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

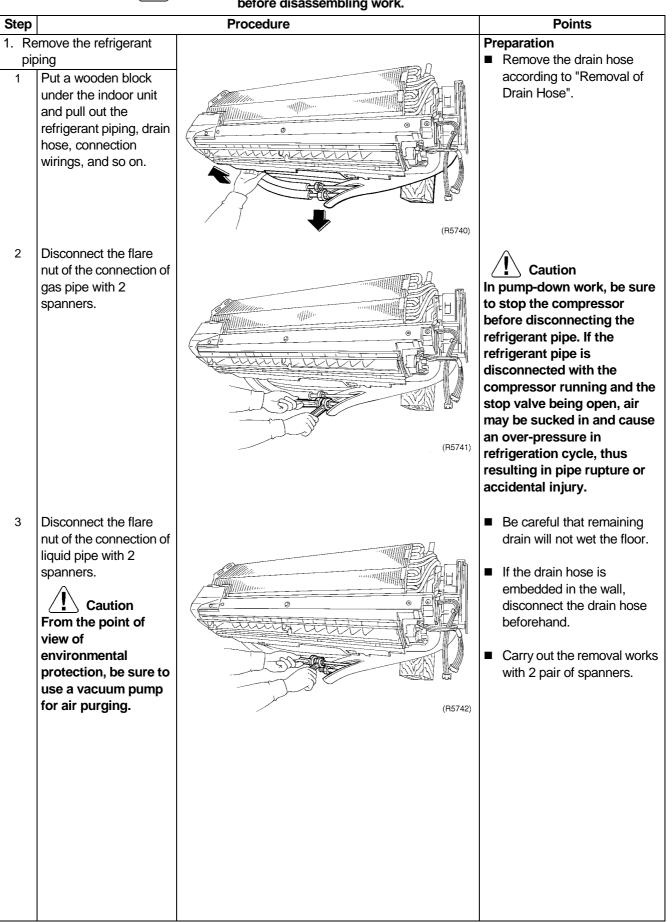




### 1.12 Removal of the Heat Exchanger



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



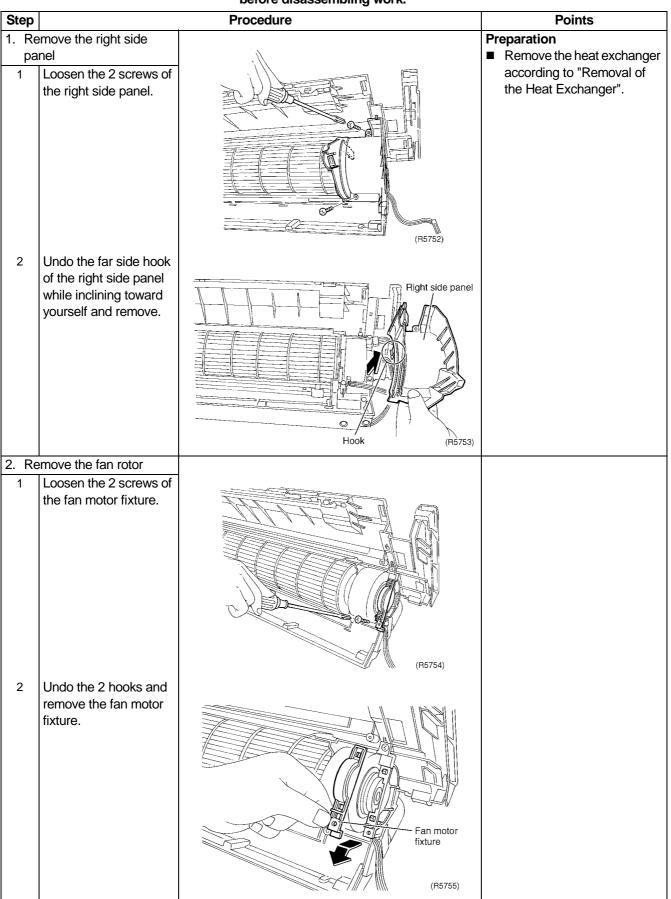
| Step  |   | Procedure  | Points   |
|-------|---|--|--|
| 2. Re | move the indoor unit<br>Remove the indoor unit<br>from the installation<br>plate.                             |  | When the pipes are<br>disconnected, protect the<br>both openings of pipe side<br>and unit side from entering<br>of moisture. |
|       |   |  |  |
| 3. Re | move the heat   | / (R5744)  | Undo the 2 hooks on the  |
| 1     | Changer<br>Unfasten the hook of<br>the pipe fixing plate at<br>the back of the unit and<br>pull out the pipe. |  | side with a flat screwdriver.  |
| 2     | Widen the auxiliary<br>pipe by about 10-20<br>degrees.  | (Internet internet in |  |

| Step |  | Procedure                       | Points  |
|------|--|---------------------------------|---|
| 3    | Loosen the 2 fixing<br>screws for heat<br>exchanger on the left.           | (B5747)                         |   |
| 4    | Lift the left side of the<br>heat exchanger, and<br>pull towards yourself. | Guides                          | Caution<br>When dismounting or<br>mounting the heat<br>exchanger, be sure to wear<br>gloves or wrap it with cloth<br>before proceeding to the<br>work. (You may be injured by<br>the fins.) |
| 5    | Undo the hook through the gap of pipes.                                    |                                 |   |
| 6    | Slide to right to undo<br>the hook and lift the<br>heat exchanger up.      | Hook<br>Hook<br>Hook<br>(B5750) | <ul> <li>(R5749)</li> <li>Be careful so the solenoid valve will not be caught in the hook.</li> </ul>   |
|      |  | Fixing hook for heat exchanger  |   |

#### **1.13 Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor**



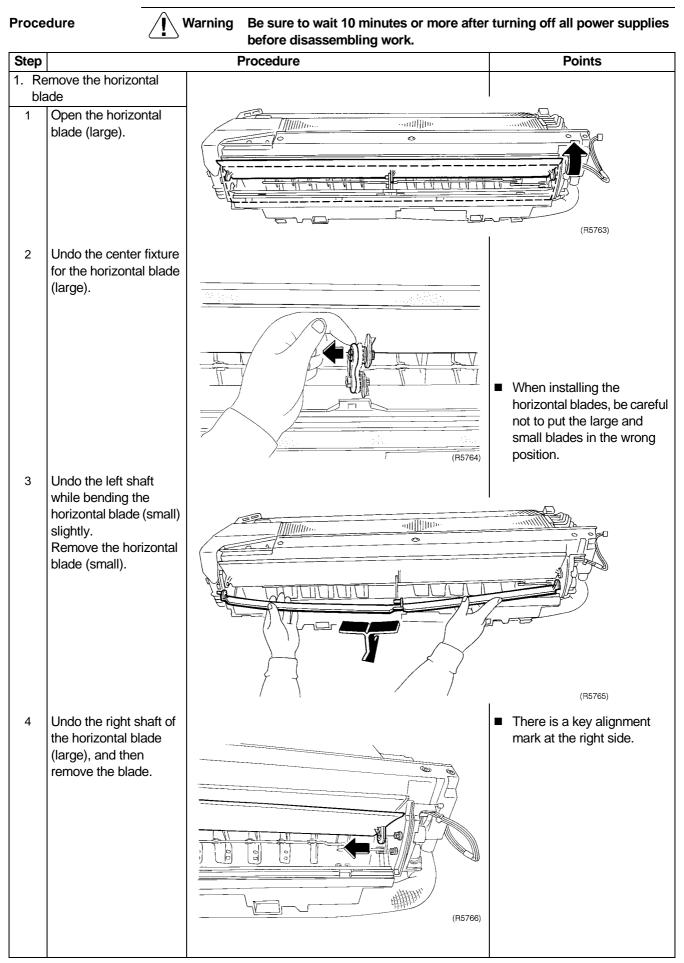
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

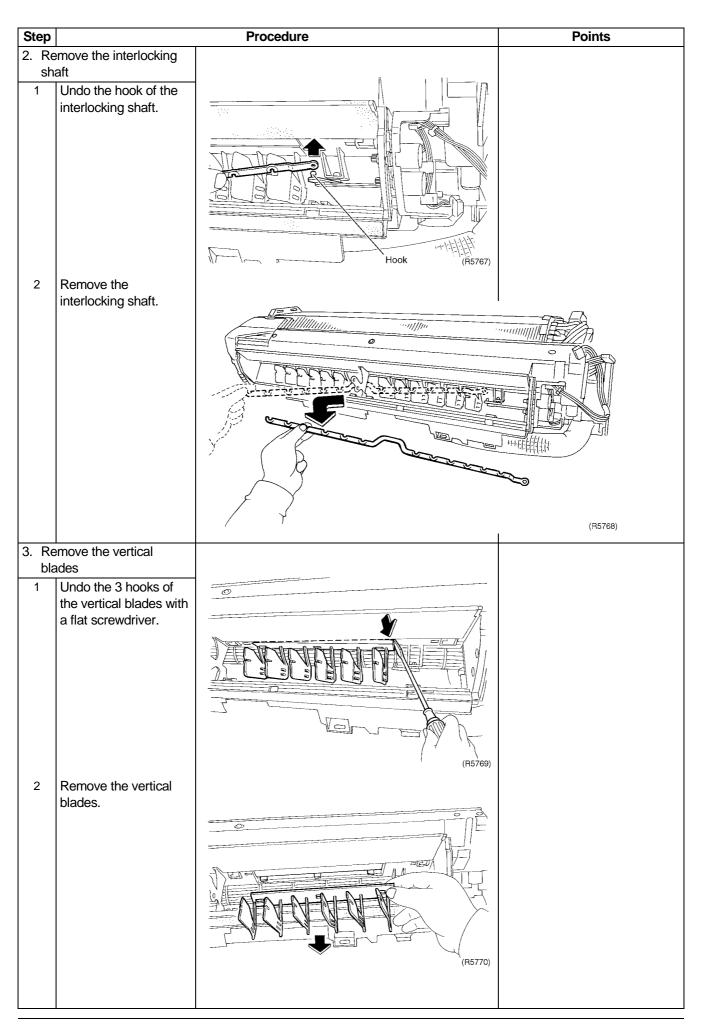


| Step  |  | Procedure            | Points                              |
|-------|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 3     | Remove the fan motor                                 |                      | The fan motor fixture (lower)       |
|       | and fan rotor.                                       | Fan rotor<br>(R5756) | can be removed by pushing the hook. |
| 3. Re | move the fan motor                                   |                      |                                     |
| 1     | Loosen the fixing screw for fan rotor and fan motor. |                      |                                     |
| 2     | Remove the fan motor<br>and fan rotor.               | (F5757)              |                                     |
| 4. Re | move the bearing                                     |                      |                                     |
| 1     | Remove the fan rotor.                                |                      |                                     |
| 2     | Undo the 1 hook of the bearing.                      | Hook (R5759)         |                                     |

| Step |   | Procedure  | Points |
|------|---|--|--------|
| 3    | The bearing is made of<br>rubber. Push it inward<br>firmly and remove it. | Bearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pearing<br>Pea |        |
|      | w to install the fan  |  |        |
|      | votor<br>When assembling,<br>align the mark on the<br>shaft.              |  |        |

### 1.14 Removal of Horizontal Blades / Vertical Blades

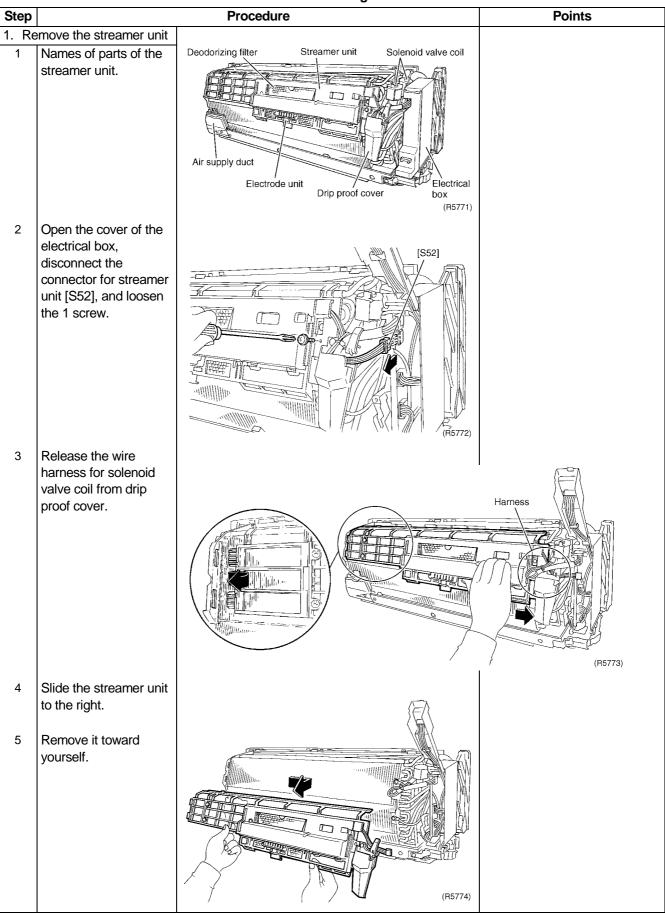


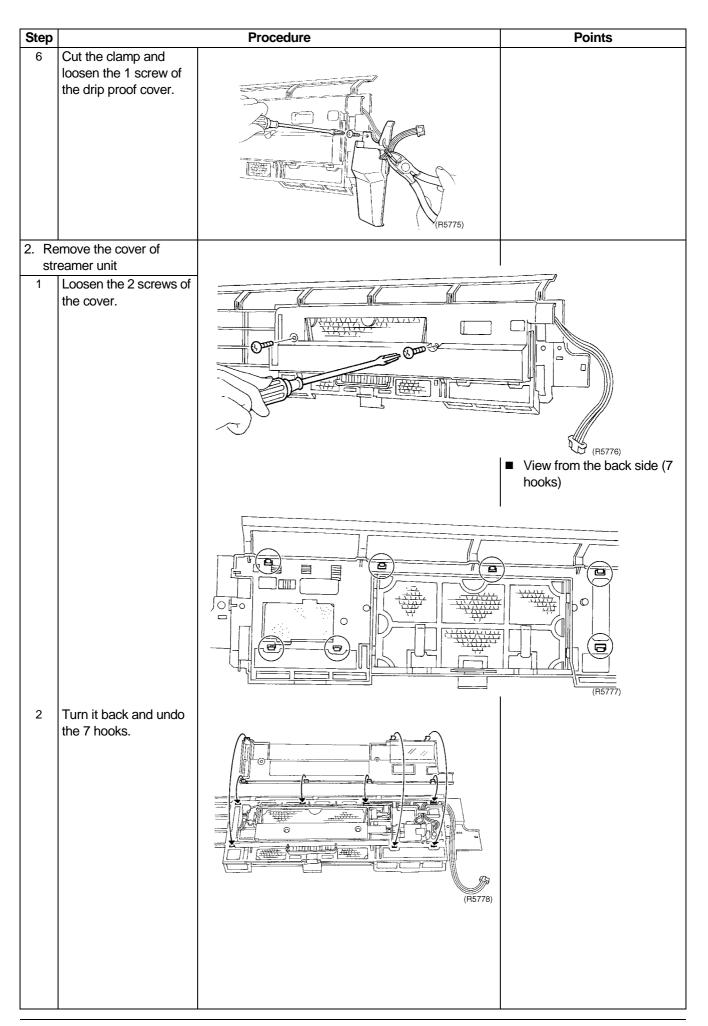


#### 1.15 Removal of the Streamer Unit

#### Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.





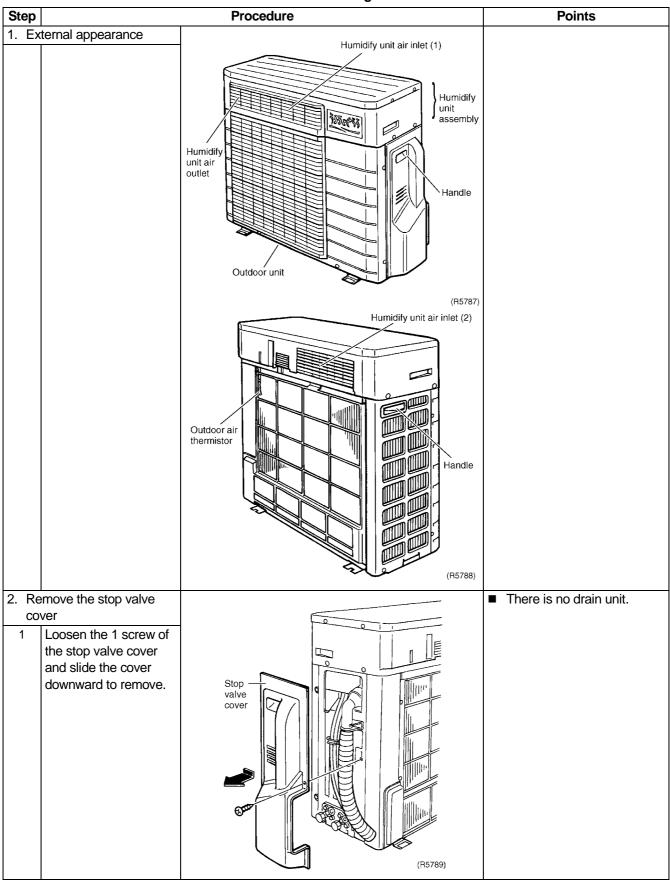
| Step |   | Procedure                                    | Points                      |
|------|---|--|-----------------------------|
|      | move the deodorizing                              |  | See page 218 for removal of |
| filt | er and electrode unit                             |  | the deodorizing filter.     |
| 1    | Remove the deodorizing filter and electrode unit. | Electrode unit<br>Deodorizing filter (R5779) |                             |
| 2    | Slide the cover of the                            |  | When assembling, slide to   |
|      | electrode unit to the left to remove.             | Hooks<br>(R5780)                             | the right.                  |
| 3    | Electrode for                                     |  |                             |
| 5    | discharging.                                      | <pre></pre>                                  |                             |
|      |   |  |                             |

| Step   |  | Procedure | Points  |
|--------|--|-----------|---------|
| 4. Re  | move the streamer unit                     |           |         |
| 1<br>1 |  | Screw     |         |
| 2      | Undo the 2 hooks of the streamer unit PCB. |           | (R5784) |
| 5. Dis | sconnect the limit switch                  |           |         |
| 1      | Disconnect the limit<br>switch.            |           |         |

# Outdoor Unit Removal of the Humidify Unit

Procedure

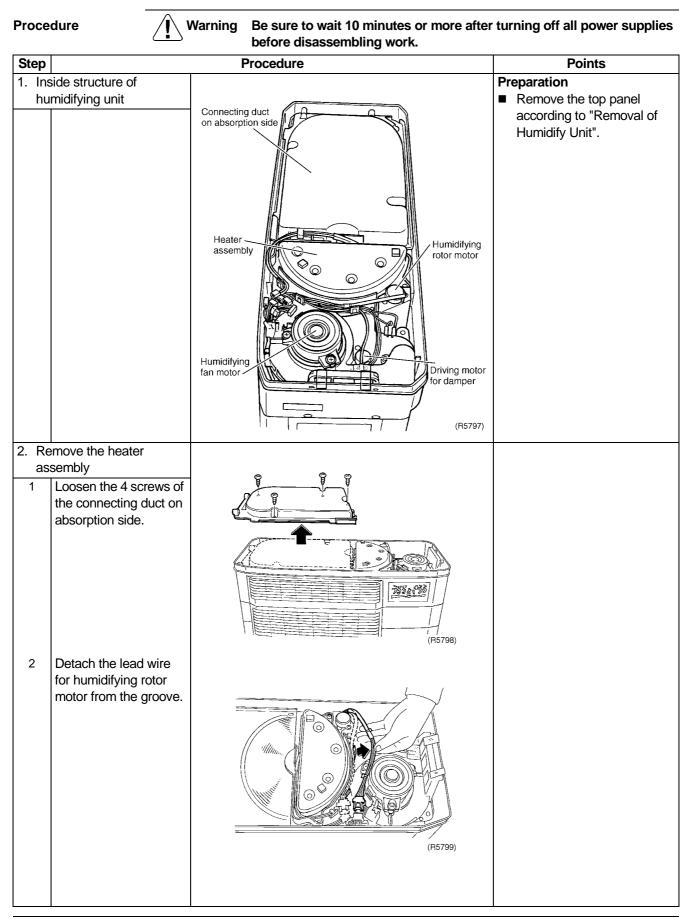
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step |  | Procedure | Points   |
|------|--|-----------|--|
|      | move the top panel                                     |           |  |
| 1    | Loosen the 4 screws.                                   |           |  |
|      | move the humidify unit                                 |           | Be sure to wait 10 minutes   |
| 1    | The figure shows the arrangement of the relay harness. |           | or more after turning off the<br>power supply before<br>disconnecting the<br>connectors. |
| 2    | Disconnect the 5 relay connectors.                     |           |  |
|      |  | Formation |  |

| Step |  | Procedure           |   | Points   |
|------|--|---------------------|---|--|
| 3    | Disconnect the connector for the humidify fan motor.                               |                     |   | Be sure to wait 10 minutes<br>or more after turning off the<br>power supply before<br>disconnecting the<br>connectors. |
|      |  | (F5793)             | - | Pull out the connector while pushing up the hook on the bottom side.   |
| 4    | Loosen the 4 screws of humidify unit and lift it up to remove.                     | Humidify unit       |   |  |
|      |  | (15794)             |   | <from back="" side="" the=""><br/>(R5796)</from>   |
| 5    | The figure shows the positions of the duct in humidifier and the relay connectors. | Relay<br>connectors |   | When installing the humidify<br>unit, do not forget to<br>connect the relay<br>connectors.                             |

#### 2.2 Removal of the Heater Assembly / Humidifying Rotor (Moisture Absorption Element) / Humidifying Rotor Motor

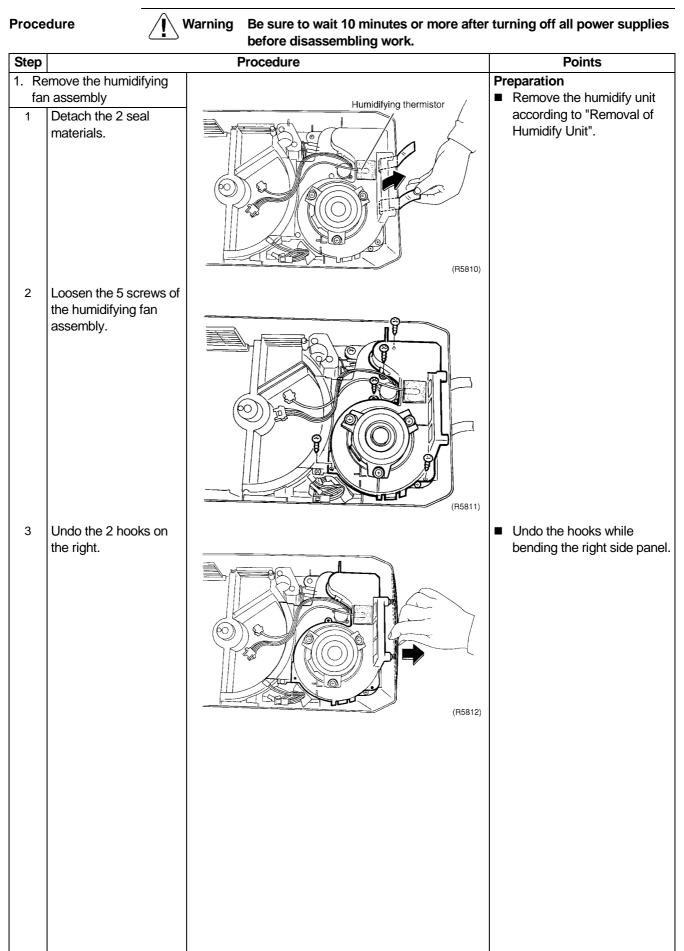


| Step |  | Procedure  | Points  |
|------|--|--|---|
| 3    | Loosen the 2 screws to remove the heater         | ୍ଷ   |   |
|      | assembly.  | <image/>   |   |
| 4    | Undo the 1 hook.                                 |  |   |
|      |  | Hook Contraction of the second s |   |
| 5    | Inside of the heater                             | (R5801)  | Heater and thermal fuse   |
|      | assembly.  | Heater<br>Thermal fuse<br>(R5802)  | should be replaced as the heater assembly.                                |
| 6    | Loosen the 4 screws of<br>the thermal protector. | (Kode)   | The thermal protector is<br>removable. Remove it<br>before the lead wire. |

| Step |   | Procedure  | Points  |
|------|---|--|---------|
| 7    | Inside structure of the heater assembly.                  | Heater assembly<br>(R5804)   |         |
|      | move the humidifying                                      |  |         |
| rot  | or.   | X  |         |
| 1    | Detach the lead wire<br>for fan motor from the<br>groove. | Fan motor lead wire  | (FS805) |
| 2    | Remove the bell mouth<br>on absorption side.              | Bell mouth of<br>absorption side         Contraction         Contraction |         |

| Step |   | Procedure  | Points  |
|------|---|--|---|
| 3    | Lift the humidifying<br>rotor up to remove.     | Humidifying rotor<br>(Moisture absorption<br>element)                      | A heat catalyst (black) is applied on the upper side. |
|      | move the humidifying or motor                   |  |   |
| 1    | The figure shows the connector for rotor motor. | (FS80)   |   |
| 2    | Loosen the 2 screws of<br>the rotor motor.      | Hunidifying rotor         Rotor driving part         Octor         (F5809) |   |

#### 2.3 Removal of the Humidifying Assembly



| Step |  | Procedure | Points   |
|------|--|-----------|--|
| 4    | Remove the<br>humidifying assembly.  | (F5813)   | <ul> <li>The humidifying assembly<br/>should be replaced as an<br/>assembly set.<br/>(Disassembling of the<br/>assembly can cause a<br/>noise.)</li> </ul> |
| 5    | Detach the seal<br>material to release the<br>humidifying thermistor.  | (P5814)   | <ul> <li>Inside structure of the upper part of the humidifying assembly.</li> </ul>  |
| ex   | move the air supply and<br>haust changeover<br>mper<br>Loosen the 3 screws of<br>the air supply and<br>exhaust changeover<br>damper. |           |  |

| Step |  | Procedure   | Points |
|------|--|---|--------|
| 2    | Lift the air supply and exhaust changeover damper to remove. | ь   |        |
|      |  | Air supply and exhaust<br>changeover damper<br>changeover damper<br>changeo |        |
| 3    | Loosen the 1 screw of the driving motor for damper.          |   |        |
|      |  | Driving motor<br>for damper (R5818)   |        |
|      |  | Limit switch  |        |
|      |  |   |        |

# 2.4 Removal of the Moisture Absorption Fan Motor



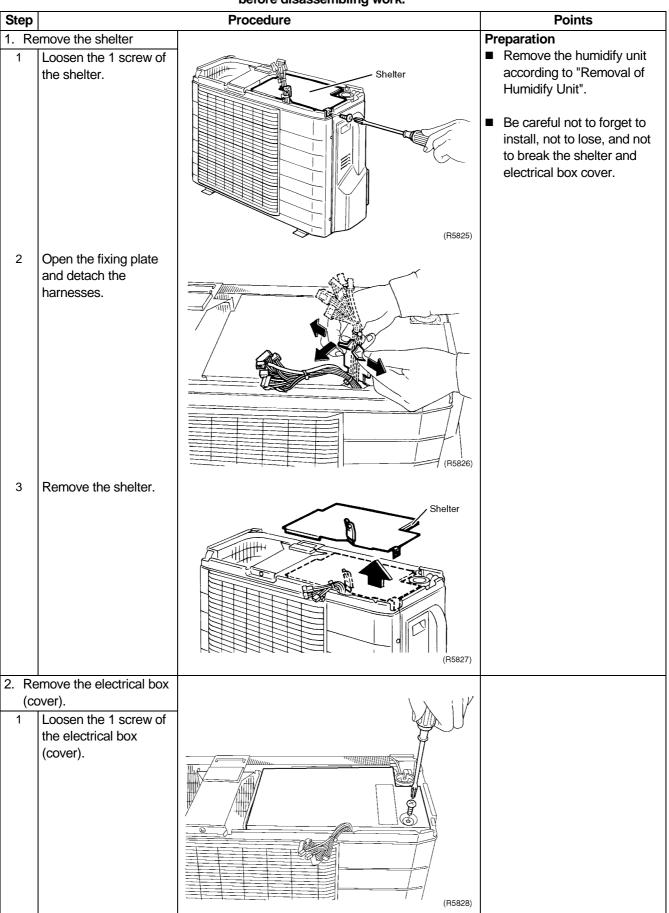
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

|         | before disassembling work.   |   |   |   |  |
|---------|--|---|---|---|--|
| Step    |  | Procedure   |   | Points  |  |
|         | move the moisture  |   |   | reparation  |  |
| ab<br>1 | sorption fan<br>Disconnect the<br>connector for fan motor<br>and remove the bell<br>mouth on absorption<br>side. |   |   | Remove the humidifying<br>rotor according to "Removal<br>of Humidifying Rotor". |  |
| 2       | Loosen the fan fixing<br>nut (M10) of the<br>moisture absorption fan<br>and remove.                              | (R5820)   | - | When assembling, align the<br>▼ mark and D cut of the motor shaft.              |  |
|         | move the moisture  |   |   | Lift the fixing plate first and   |  |
| ab      | sorption fan motor<br>Loosen the 3 screws of<br>the fan motor fixing<br>plate.                                   | (R5822)   |   | pull out.   |  |
| 2       | Remove the moisture absorption fan motor.  | Moisture<br>absorption<br>fan motor<br>fan motor<br>fixing plate<br>(R5823) |   |   |  |

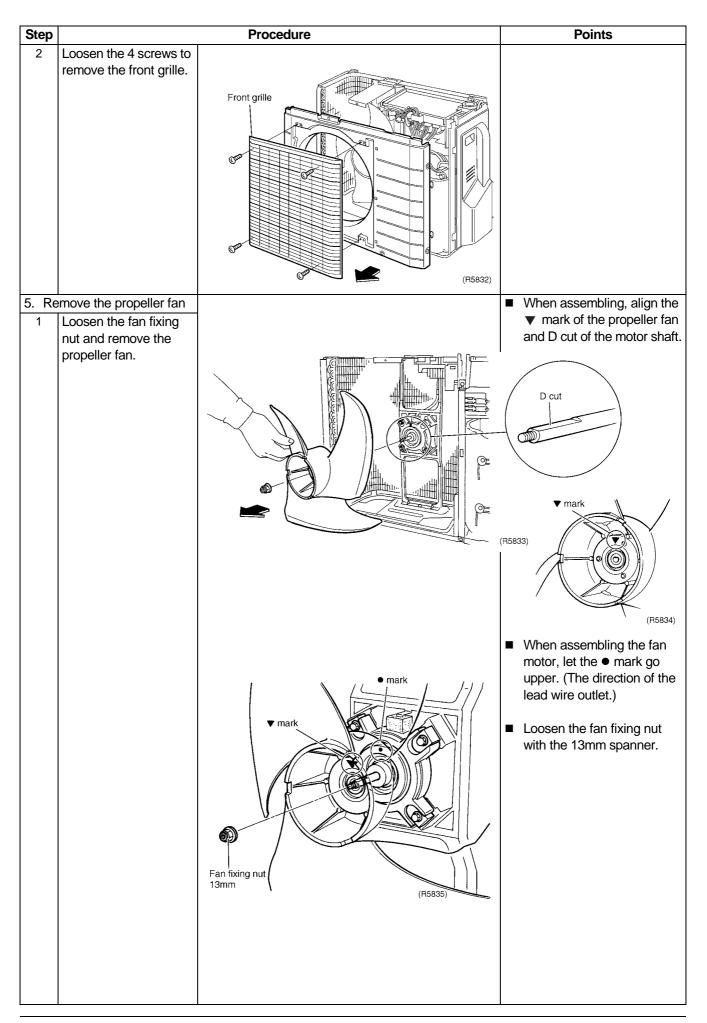
#### 2.5 Removal of the Propeller Fan / Fan Motor



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step  |  | Procedure  | Points                       |
|-------|--|--|------------------------------|
| 2     | Lift the electrical box  | i roccure  |                              |
| 2     | (cover) and remove.  |  |                              |
| 0     |  | (R5829)  |                              |
|       | move the drip proof  |  | Service monitor (LED A).     |
| 1     | ver<br>Lift the drip proof cover                                     |  | Check the LED from the slit. |
|       | and remove.  | L  |                              |
| 4 Re  | move the front panel   |  |                              |
| 4. Re | Loosen the 9 screws of   | 1 <sup>E</sup>   |                              |
|       | the front panel. There<br>are 5 hooks in total of<br>right and left. | for the set of the set |                              |



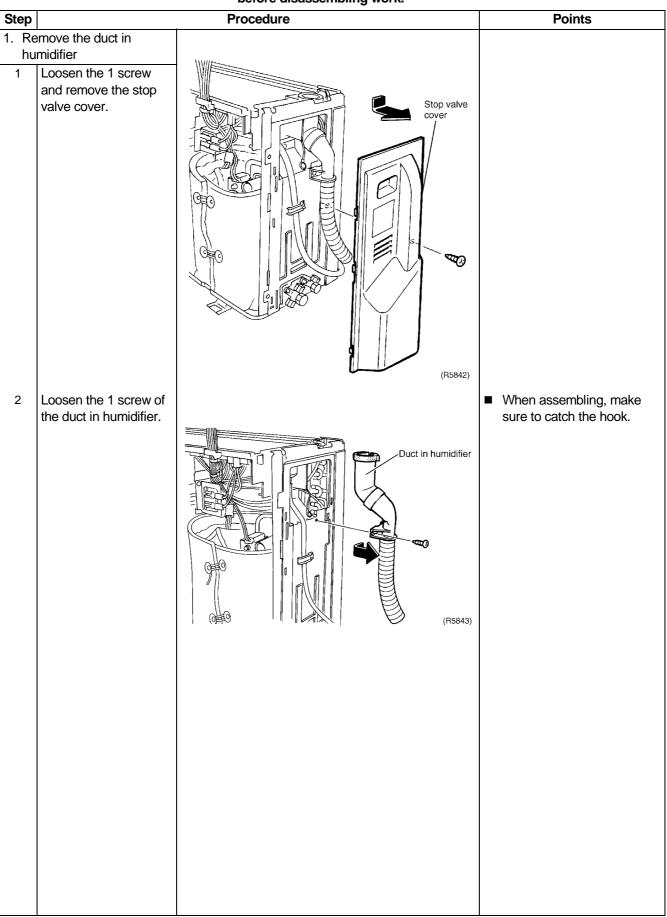
| Step  |  | Procedure   | Points |
|-------|--|---|--------|
| 6. Re | move the fan motor                                       |   |        |
| 1     | Disconnect the fan<br>motor connector [S70]<br>from PCB. | 570<br>6<br>6<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70<br>70 |        |
| 2     | Detach the lead wire                                     |   |        |
|       | for fan motor and pass                                   | Lead wire for fan motor   |        |
|       | the lead wire downward through the                       |   |        |
|       | opening.   | (F5837)   |        |
| 3     | Loosen the 1 screw of                                    |   |        |
|       | the fan motor fixing<br>plate.                           |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |
|       |  |   |        |

| Step  |   | Procedure | Points   |
|-------|---|-----------|--|
| 4     | Detach the upper part<br>of the fan motor fixing<br>plate.  |           | Heat exchanger fin   |
| 5     | Fan motor fixing plate<br>has the 2 hooks on<br>lower part.   |           |  |
| 6 7 8 | Undo the fixing hook<br>for lead wire and<br>detach the lead wire.<br>Loosen the 4 screws of<br>the fan motor.<br>Pull out the rubber<br>vibration isolators<br>sideward. | (F584)    | <ul> <li>When assembling, put the lead wire through the back of the motor. (so as not to be entangled with the propeller fan)</li> </ul> |

### 2.6 Removal of the Duct in Humidifier



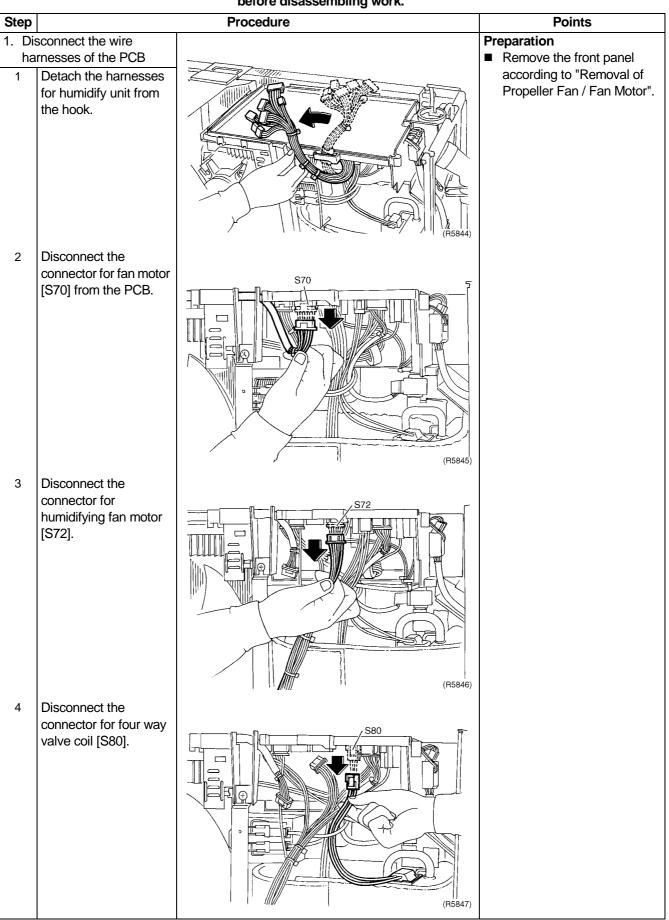
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



## 2.7 Removal of the Electrical Box



Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step |   | Procedure                             | Points  |
|------|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| 5    | Disconnect the  |                                       |   |
|      | connector for<br>expansion valve coil<br>[S20].                     |                                       |   |
| 6    | Disconnect the<br>connector for<br>thermistor assembly<br>[S90].    | 590<br>590<br>590<br>590<br>65849)    | <ul> <li>Thermistor assembly is in a set of 3 thermistors.<br/>(Outdoor air, heat exchanger, and discharge pipe thermistors)</li> </ul> |
| 7    | Disconnect the<br>connector for<br>humidifying thermistor<br>[S91]. |                                       |   |
| 8    | Disconnect the Faston<br>terminal from the<br>reactor.              | Purple<br>Purple<br>Orange<br>(R5851) |   |

| Step |   | Procedure | Points  |
|------|---|-----------|---|
| 9    | Disconnect the relay<br>harness for<br>compressor.                                      |           |   |
| . Di | sconnect the power  |           | Thermal fuse should be  |
| 1    | pply / connecting wiring<br>Loosen the 1 screw of<br>connecting wire<br>terminal board. |           | <ul><li>replaced with the terminal board.</li><li>You can work without removing the terminal board.</li></ul> |
| 2    | Disconnect the connecting wires.  |           |   |
|      |   |           |   |

| Step |  | Procedure                       | Points  |
|------|--|---------------------------------|---|
| 4    | Disconnect the<br>connectors black<br>(power supply), white<br>(power supply), and<br>red (signal) and detach<br>the earth wire. | Black White Red<br>Green/Yellow | <ul> <li>Black-power supply<br/>White-power supply<br/>Red-signal<br/>Green/Yellow-earth</li> </ul> |
| 5    | Undo the clip for the<br>thermistor assembly<br>fixed to the electrical<br>box.  |                                 | The clip is push-mount type.  |
| 6    | Loosen the each 1<br>screw in front and on<br>the right of the<br>electrical box.  |                                 |   |
| 7    | Lift the electrical box to remove.   | Electrical box                  |   |

## 2.8 Removal of the PCB

#### Procedure

Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

|      | before disassembling work.                                  |               |  |  |
|------|---|---------------|--|--|
| Step |   | Procedure     | Points   |  |
| 1    | Loosen the 7 screws<br>for the PCB or the<br>radiation fin. | Screws        | <ul> <li>Preparation</li> <li>Remove the electrical box according to "Removal of Electrical Box".</li> <li>The control PCB is in up</li> </ul>       |  |
|      |   |               | <ul> <li>side down.</li> <li>PbF (Pb free brazing) is adopted.</li> <li>When replacing, use a exclusive solder and soldering iron.</li> </ul>        |  |
| 2    | Remove the PCB and the radiation fin.                       |               | In working, be careful not to<br>break the PCB with the<br>excessive force because<br>the PCB and the radiation<br>fin are adhered to one<br>another |  |
|      |   | (R5861)       | <ul> <li>When assembling, make<br/>sure to use the silicon<br/>material.</li> <li>Silicon material<br/>Part No.: 1172698</li> </ul>                  |  |
|      |   | Radiation fin |  |  |
|      |   | (R5862)       |  |  |
|      |   |               |  |  |

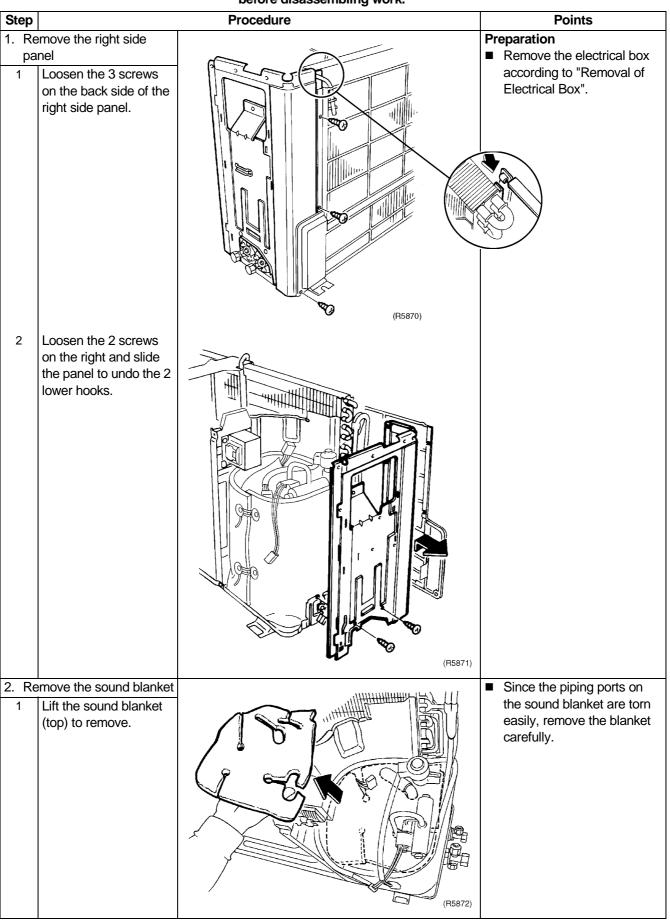
| Step |  | Procedure                             | Points |
|------|--|---------------------------------------|--------|
| 3    | Loosen the 2 screws<br>and 1 clip to remove<br>the heat interception<br>plate.     | Heat interception<br>plate<br>(F5863) |        |
| 4    | Cut the fixing clamps<br>for the wire harnesses.                                   |                                       |        |
| 5    | Loosen the 2 fixing screws of the PCB.   |                                       |        |
| 6    | Raise the PCB toward<br>yourself and undo the 3<br>hooks of the electrical<br>box. | Hooks<br>(R5866)                      |        |

| Step |                        | Procedure                               | Points   |
|------|------------------------|---|--|
| 7    | Remove the PCB from    |   |  |
|      | the electrical box.    | (R5867)                                 |  |
| 8    | Disconnect the each    |   |  |
|      | wire harness.          |   | <ul> <li>S20 : Expansion valve</li> <li>S21 : Humidifying rotor motor</li> <li>S22 : Damper motor</li> <li>S501: LS</li> <li>S70 : Fan motor</li> <li>S72 : Humidifying fan motor</li> <li>S80 : Four way valve</li> <li>S90 : Thermistor (outdoor air / heat exchanger / discharge pipe)</li> <li>S91 : Humidifying thermistor</li> </ul> |
| 9    | Names of parts of PCB. |   |  |
|      |                        | LED5(green) S91 S90 S70 S72 S21 S80 S20 | HK2(white)<br>S22<br>S501<br>HK3(red)<br>Varistor<br>LEDA(green)<br>Fuse<br>3, 15A 250V<br>(R5869)   |

### 2.9 Removal of the Sound Blanket

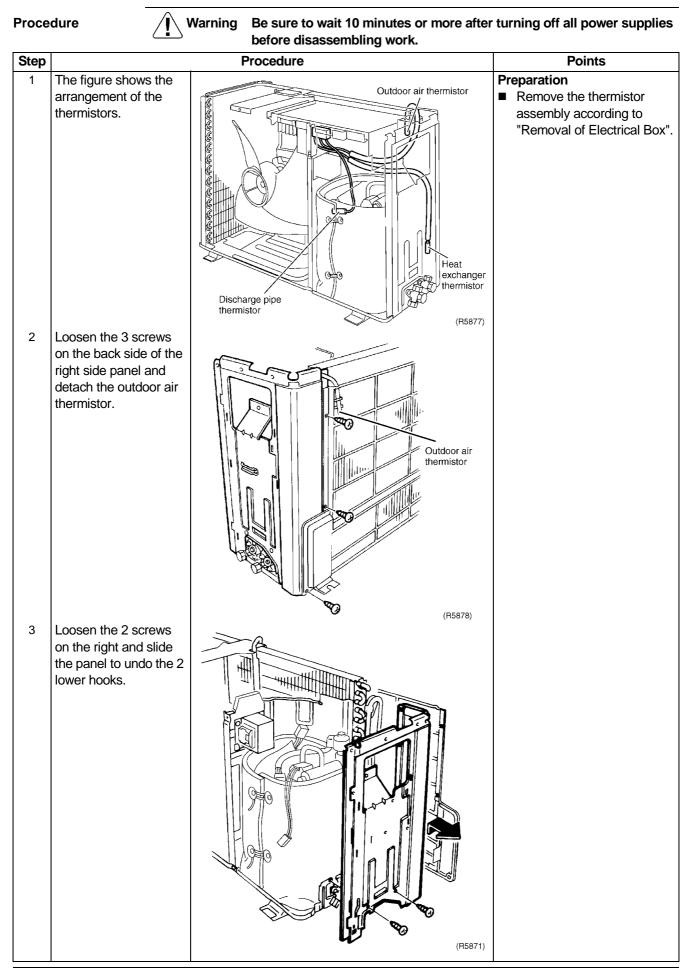


Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.



| Step |  | Procedure | Points  |
|------|--|-----------|---|
| 2    | Undo the fixing strings<br>of the sound blanket<br>(outer body). | (R5873)   |   |
| 3    | Open the sound<br>blanket (outer body)<br>and pull it out.       | (F5874)   | Since the piping ports on<br>the sound blanket are torn<br>easily, remove the blanket<br>carefully. |
| 4    | Open the sound<br>blanket (inner body)<br>and pull it out.       |           |   |
| 5    | Pull the sound blanket<br>(bottom) out.                          | (FS876)   |   |

## 2.10 Remove the Thermistor Assembly

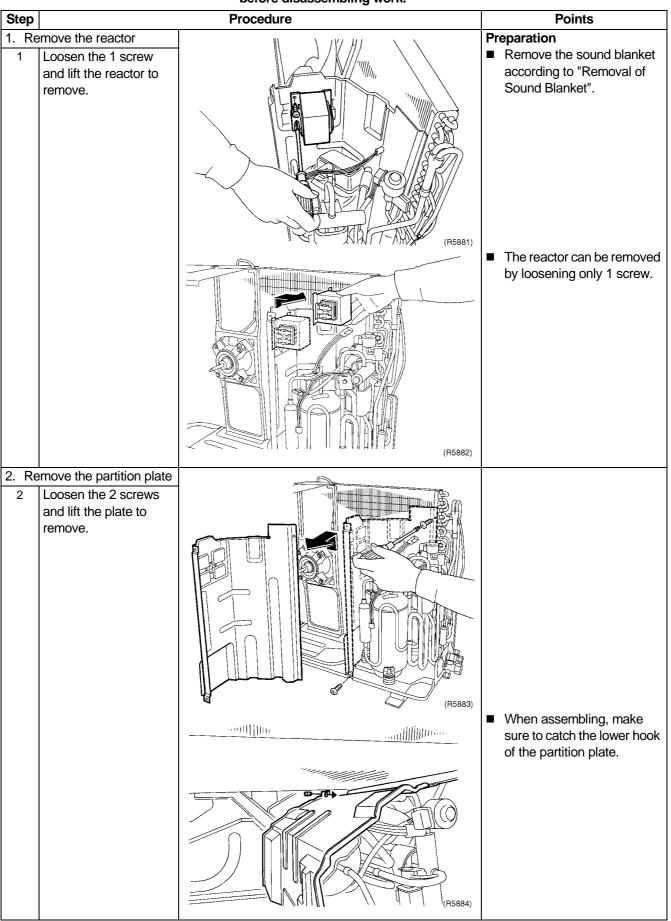


| Step |  | Procedure | Points  |
|------|--|-----------|---|
| 4    | Detach the heat                            |           |   |
|      | exchanger thermistor.                      | (P5879)   |   |
|      |  |           | Be careful not to loose the<br>clip for the thermistor.   |
| 5    | Lift the sound blanket<br>(top) to remove. |           | Since the piping ports on<br>the sound blanket are torn<br>easily, remove the blanket<br>carefully.   |
| 6    | Detach the discharge<br>pipe thermistor.   |           | <ul> <li>Detach the discharge pipe thermistor while opening the thermistor fixing clip.</li> <li>Be careful not to loose the fixing clip for the discharge pipe thermistor.</li> <li>Meet the edge of the thermistor and clip when assembling.</li> </ul> |

## 2.11 Removal of the Reactor / Partition Plate



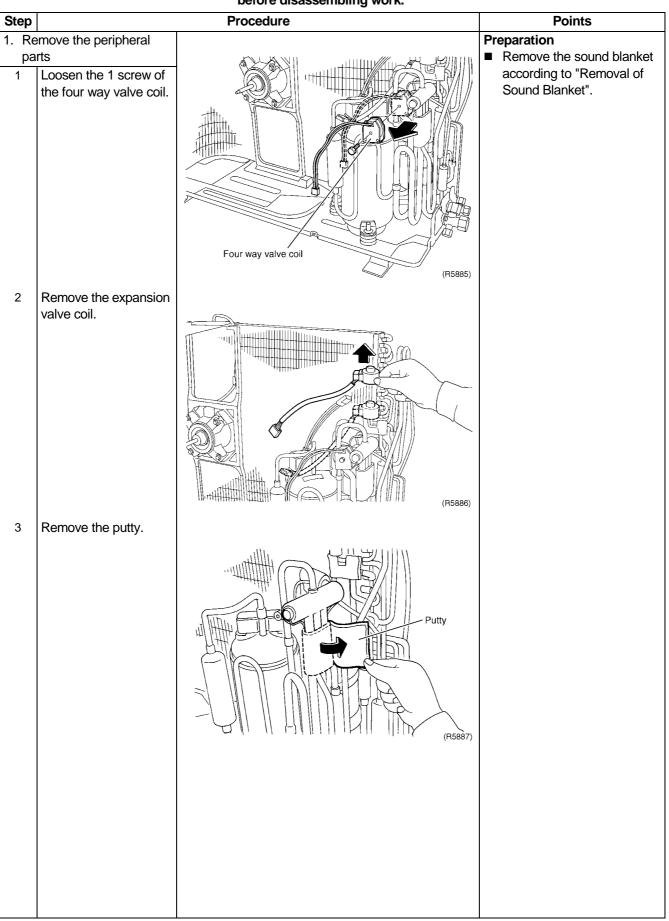
Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

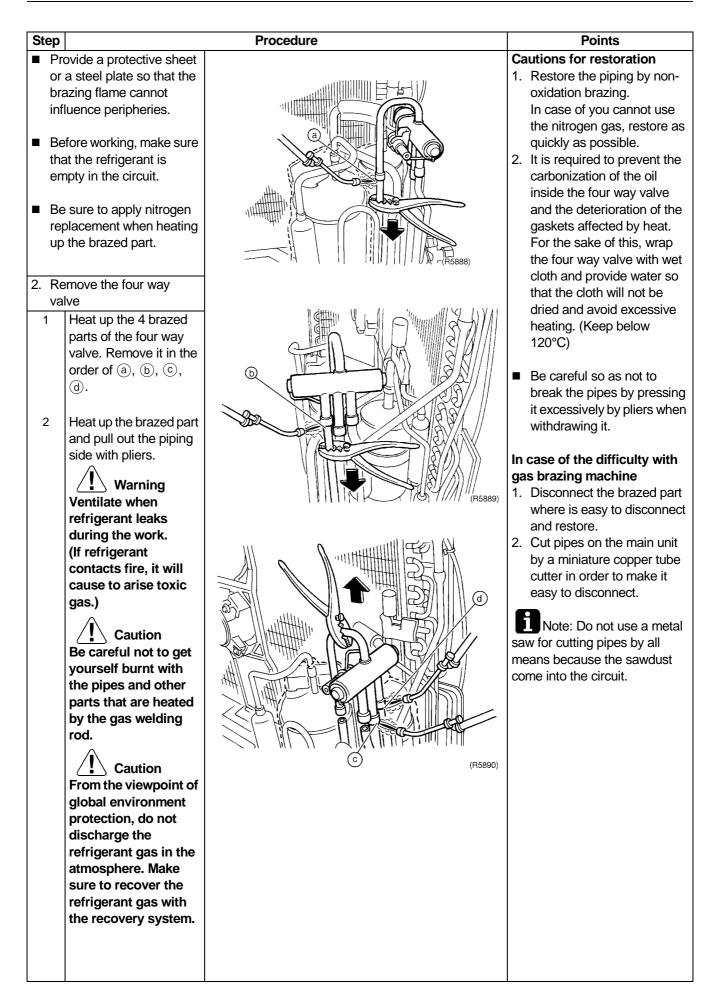


## 2.12 Removal of the Four Way Valve

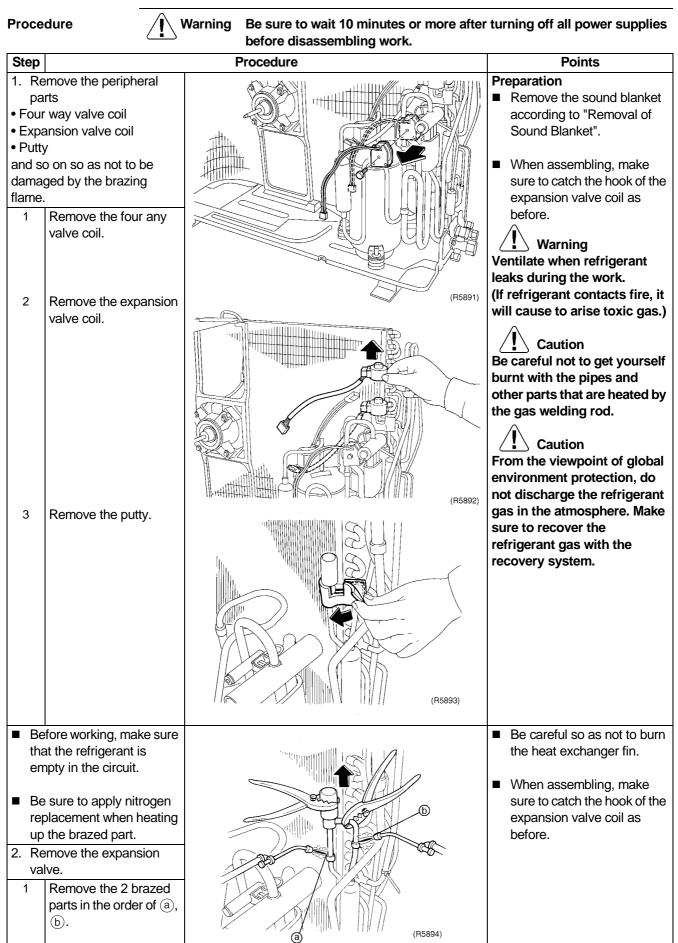


Warning Be sure to wait 10 minutes or more after turning off all power supplies before disassembling work.

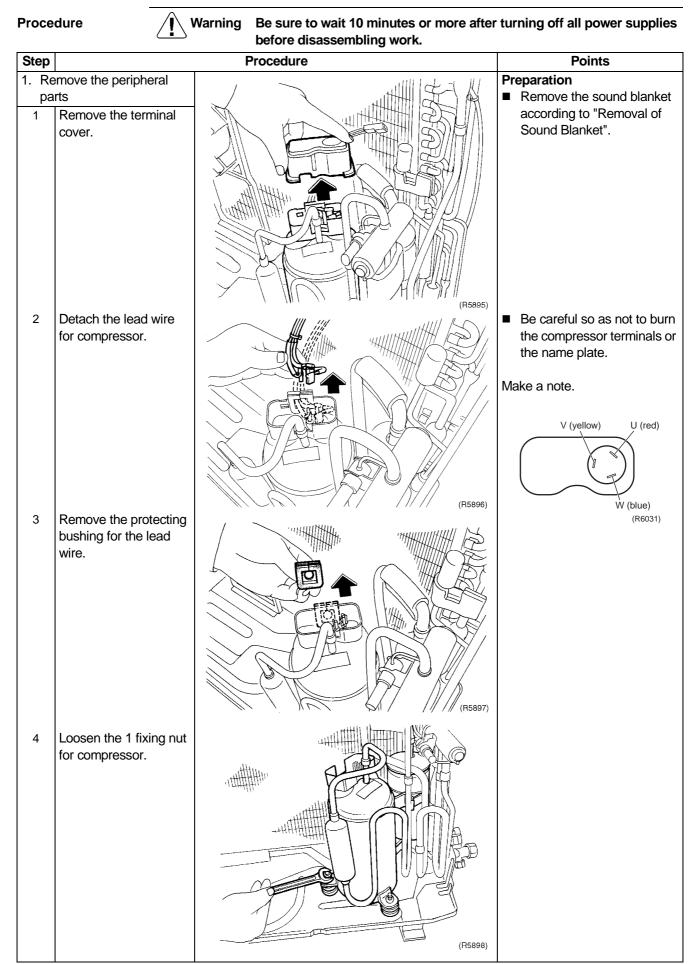


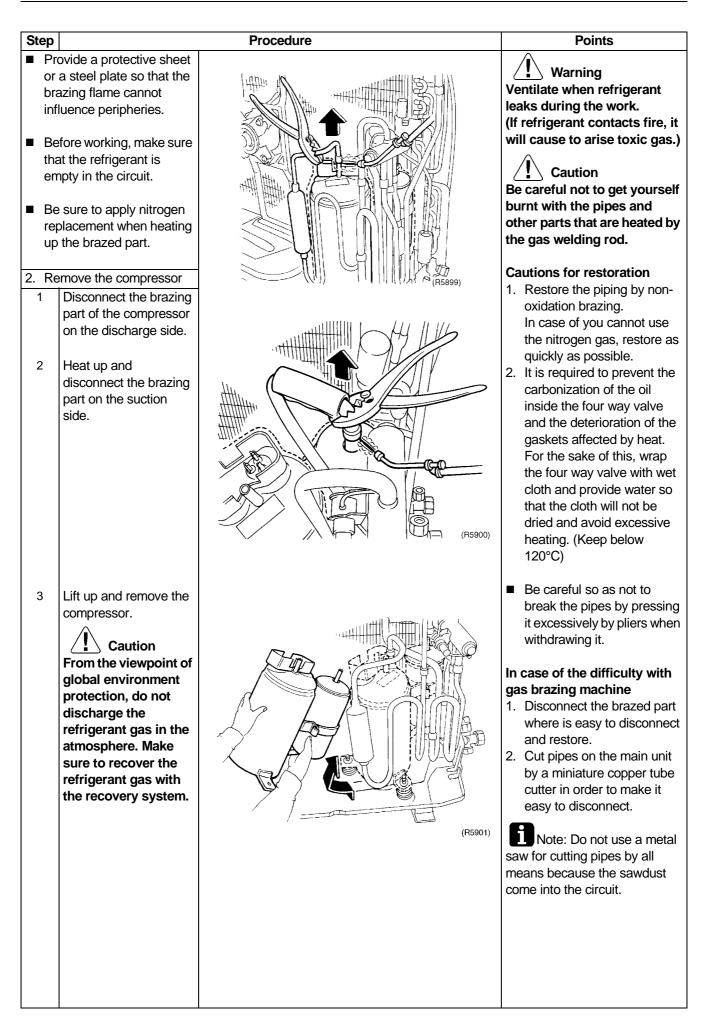


## 2.13 Removal of the Expansion Valve



## 2.14 Removal of the Compressor





## Part 8 Others

| 1. | . Others |                                     |     |
|----|----------|-------------------------------------|-----|
|    |          | Test Run from the Remote Controller |     |
|    | 1.2      | Field Setting                       | 299 |

# Others Test Run from the Remote Controller

#### For Heat pump

In cooling mode, select the lowest programmable temperature; in heating mode, select the highest programmable temperature.

- Trial operation may be disabled in either mode depending on the room temperature.
- After trial operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level. (26°C to 28°C in cooling mode, 20°C to 24°C in heating mode)
- For protection, the system disables restart operation for 3 minutes after it is turned off.

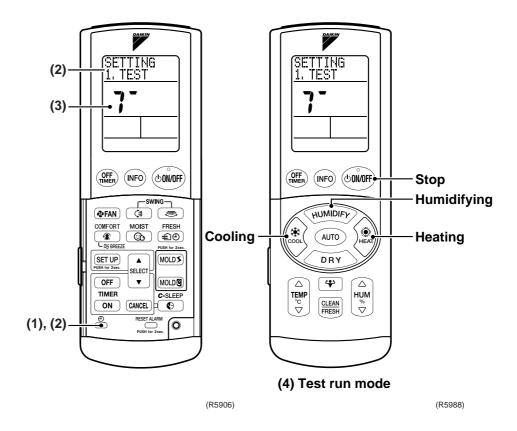
#### **Trial Operation and Testing**

- 1. Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it falls in the specified range.
- 2. Trial operation should be carried out in either cooling or heating mode.
- 3. To perform a test run for humidifying operation, activate test run mode from the remote controller following the instructions below and press the "HUMIDIFY" button.
- 4. Operate the unit in accordance with the operation manual to check that it operates normally.
- Even when the air conditioner is not operating, it consumes some electric power. If the customer is not going to use the unit soon after it is installed, turn off the breaker to avoid wasting electricity.

#### **Trial operation from Remote Controller**

(1) Hold the "CLOCK" button for 5 seconds.

- (The matrix display will appear on the remote controller.)
- (2) Display " **SETTING** " on the matrix display of the remote controller and press the "CLOCK" button.
- (3) "7" will be displayed and the unit will enter test run mode.
- (4) Press the button corresponding to the test run mode.
  - Test run mode will stop automatically after around 30 minutes. Press the ON/OFF button to force the test-run to stop.



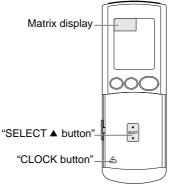
## 1.2 Field Setting

#### 1.2.1 Humidifying Hose Length

#### Setting the humidifying hose length.

• Set the humidifying hose length to ensure humidifying capacity. Use the remote controller to set the humidifying hose length. When doing this, power on the unit as communication is established between the unit and the remote controller.

(The humidifying hose length includes the rear of the indoor unit.)



(R5905)

- (1) Hold "CLOCK button" for more than 5 seconds.
  - (To cancel, do not operate the button for 10 seconds. The display will return to normal.)
- (2) Press "SELECT ▲ . button".Select " SETTING2, PIPE "
- (3) Press "CLOCK button" to activate the hose length setting mode.
   (Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the main unit while operating it.) The display will show the currently set hose length.
   (Default is no setting.)
- (4) Press "SELECT ▲. button" to set the humidifying hose length. Pressing "SELECT ▲. button" changes the hose length. You may set the hose length to 5 levels, ~3M, 3.1~4M, 4.1~6M, 6.1~8M, 8.1~10M.
- (5) Press "CLOCK button" after selecting the hose length.(Direct the remote controller toward the main unit while operating it.)
- (6) Hold "CLOCK button" for more than 5 seconds. The humidifying hose length setting is complete.

If you set the wrong humidifying hose length, cancel the setting displaying

PIPE SET " with the step 4) operation and reset it. RESET

#### When the unit cannot be powered on.

 When setting the humidifying hose length without powering on the unit, the display shows
 " PIPE LEN " with the step 5) operation shown above but the remote controller UNDEF

remembers the set hose length.

(When the customer uses the unit, the humidifying hose length information is sent to the indoor unit to be set.)

#### 1.2.2 How to set the different addresses

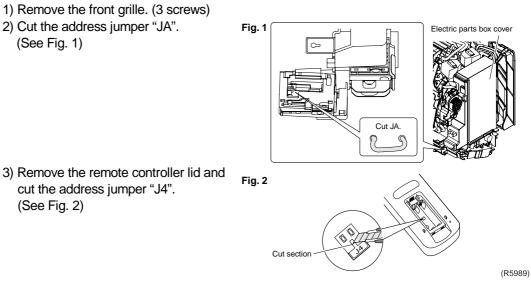
When 2 indoor units are installed in one room, the 2 wireless remote controllers can be set for different addresses.

- 1) Remove the front grille. (3 screws)
- 2) Cut the address jumper "JA".

cut the address jumper "J4".

(See Fig. 1)

(See Fig. 2)



1.2.3 Jumper Setting

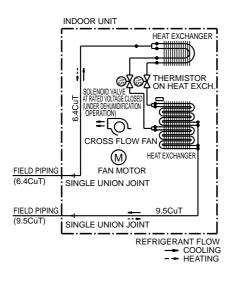
| Jumper<br>(On indoor control PCB) | Function  | When connected<br>(factory set)                     | When cut  |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|
| JC                                | Power failure recovery function   | Auto-restart  | Unit does not resume operation<br>after recovering from a power<br>failure. Timer ON-OFF settings<br>are cleared. |
| JB                                | Fan speed setting<br>when compressor is<br>OFF on thermostat.<br>(effective only at<br>cooling operation) | Fan speed setting ;<br>Remote controller<br>setting | Fan rpm is set to "0"<br><fan stop=""></fan>  |

## Part 9 Appendix

| Pipir | ng Diagrams                |  |
|-------|----------------------------|--|
|       |                            |  |
|       |                            |  |
| Wirir | ng Diagrams                |  |
|       |                            |  |
| 2.2   | Outdoor Units              |  |
|       | 1.1<br>1.2<br>Wirir<br>2.1 | <ul> <li>Piping Diagrams</li> <li>1.1 Indoor Units</li> <li>1.2 Outdoor Units</li> <li>Wiring Diagrams</li> <li>2.1 Indoor Units</li> <li>2.2 Outdoor Units</li> </ul> |

# Piping Diagrams Indoor Units

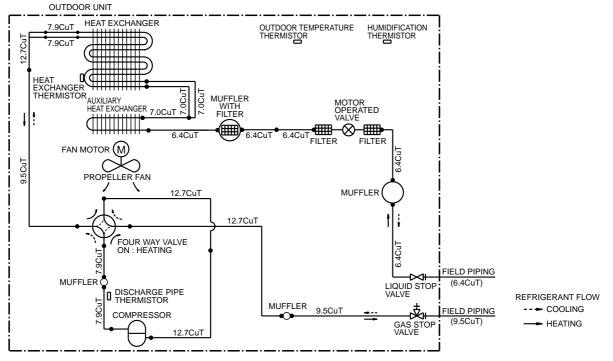
FTXR28/42/50EV1B



4D054058

## 1.2 Outdoor Units

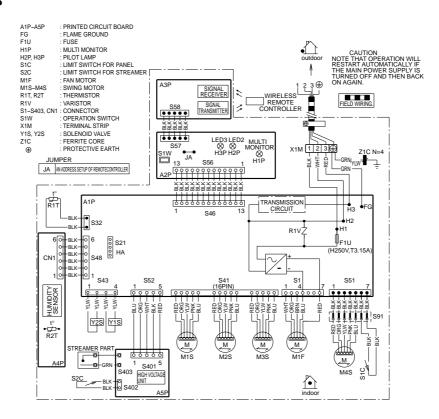
RXR28/42/50EV1B



3D053874

#### 2. Wiring Diagrams 2.1 Indoor Units

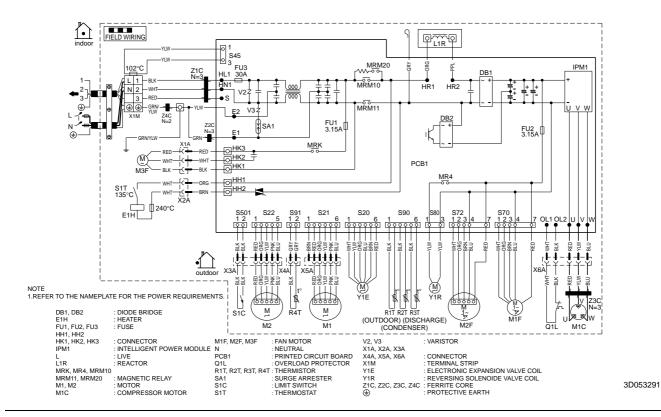
#### FTXR28/42/50EV1B



3D052768

## 2.2 Outdoor Units

RXR28/42/50EV1B





- Daikin Industries, Ltd.'s products are manufactured for export to numerous countries throughout the world. Daikin Industries, Ltd. does not have control over which products are exported to and used in a particular country. Prior to purchase, please therefore confirm with your local authorized importer, distributor and/or retailer whether this product conforms to the applicable standards, and is suitable for use, in the region where the product will be used. This statement does not purport to exclude, restrict or modify the application of any local legislation.
- Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a gualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorized parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Read the User's Manual carefully before using this product. The User's Manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any inquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor and/or retailer.

#### **Cautions on product corrosion**

900.

JOA-1452

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.

2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided and choose an outdoor unit with anti-corrosion treatment.



JMI-0107

Dealer

#### About ISO9001

defined by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) relating to quality assurance. ISO 9001 certification covers quality assurance aspects related to the "design, development, manufacture, installation, and supplementary service" of products manufactured at the plant.

ISO 9001 is a plant certification system



EC99J2044



#### About ISO 14001

ISO 14001 is the standard defined by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) relating to environmental management systems. Our group has been acknowledged by an internationally accredited compliance organisation as having an appropriate programme of environmental protection procedures and activities to meet the



#### JOA-E-90108 requirements of ISO 14001.

DAIKIN INDUSTRIES, LTD. Head Office:

Umeda Center Bldg., 2-4-12, Nakazaki-Nishi, Kita-ku, Osaka, 530-8323 Japan

Tokyo Office: JR Shinagawa East Bldg., 2-18-1, Konan, Minato-ku, Tokyo, 108-0075 Japan http://www.daikin.com/global/

©All rights reserved

• Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of August 2006 but subject to change without notice.

SiBE 04-624 Printed in Japan 08/2006 B AK